



Comodo Antispam Gateway

Software Version 2.4

Administrator Guide

Guide Version 2.4.070215

Comodo Security Solutions 1255 Broad Street Clifton, NJ, 07013

Table of Contents

1 Introduction to Comodo Antispam Gateway	4
1.1 Release Notes	5
1.2 Purchasing License	
1.3 Adding more Users, Domains or Time to your Account	8
1.4 License Information	
2 Getting Started	
2.1 Incoming Filtering Configuration	
2.1.1 Configuring Your Mail Server	
2.1.2 Configuring MX Record	
2.1.2.1 Updating MX Records in Windows 2003/2008 Server	
2.1.2.2 Updating MX Records on a host using BIND (and the 'named' daemon)	
2.1.2.3 Updating MX Records for Comodo DNS	
2.1.2.4 Updating MX Records for GoDaddy	21
2.1.2.5 Updating MX Records for Enom	22
2.1.2.6 Updating MX Records for Network Solutions	
2.1.2.7 Updating MX Records for Yahoo! Small Business	23
2.1.2.8 Updating MX Records for 1and1	24
2.1.2.9 Updating MX Records for 4D Web Hosting	24
2.1.2.10 Updating MX Records for DNS Park	25
2.1.2.11 Updating MX Records for DreamHost	
2.1.2.12 Updating MX Records for DynDNS	25
2.1.2.13 Updating MX Records for IX Web Hosting	
2.1.2.14 Updating MX Records for No-IP	
2.1.2.15 Updating MX Records in CPanel	27
2.2 Outgoing Filtering Configuration	
2.2.1 Per-User Authentication	
2.2.2 Outgoing Smarthost setup	
2.2.2.1 Configuring QMail to use a Smarthost	
2.2.2.2 Configuring PostFix to use a Smarthost	
2.2.2.3 Configuring Sendmail to use a Smarthost	
2.2.2.4 Configuring Exchange 2000/2003 to use a Smarthost	32
2.2.2.5 Configuring Exchange 2007/2010 to use a Smarthost	32
2.2.2.6 Configuring Exim to use a Smarthost	
2.2.2.6.1 Configuring Exim / cPanel to use a Smarthost	34
2.2.2.6.2 Configuring Exim / Directadmin to use a Smarthost	35
3 The Administrative Interface	
3.1 Logging-in to the Administrative Interface	37
3.2 The Dashboard Area	
3.2.1 Domain Management	
3.2.1.1 Domains	
3.2.1.1.1 Adding Domains	
3.2.1.1.2 Deleting Domains	45
3.2.1.1.3 Editing Domains	
3.2.1.1.4 Managing Domain	

3.2.1.1.4.1 Domain Dashboard	
3.2.1.1.4.2 Incoming	
3.2.1.1.4.3 Outgoing	
3.2.1.1.4.4 Email Management	
3.2.1.1.4.5 Domain Audit Log	
3.2.1.1.4.6 Whitelist / Blacklist	
3.2.1.1.4.7 Account Management	
3.2.1.1.4.7.1 User Account Management	
3.2.1.1.4.7.2 Managing User auto-import	
3.2.1.1.4.7.3 Viewing User History	
3.2.2 Audit Log.	
3.2.3 Administrator Account Management	
3.2.3.1 Administrators	
3.2.3.2 User Groups & Permissions	
3.2.3.3 Admin Groups & Permissions	
3.2.3.4 My Comodo Account	
3.2.3.5 My Profile	
3.2.3.5.1 Changing Password of the Administrator	
3.2.3.5.2 Change Settings	
3.2.3.6 Users History	
3.2.4 Customer Management	
3.2.4.1 Viewing Customer Information	
3.2.4.2 Manage Report Subscriptions	
3.2.4.3 Notification Email Settings	
4 CASG Reports - An Overview	
4.1 Quarantine Report	
4.2 Domain Statistics Report	
4.3 Auto-Imported Users Report	
4.4 Quarantine Release Report	
4.5 Reported Spam Report	
Appendix 1 - CASG Error Codes	
Appendix 2 - CASG Comparison Table	279
Appendix 3 - Troubleshooting LDAP	
Appendix 4 - Useful Links	
About Comodo	



1 Introduction to Comodo Antispam Gateway

Comodo Antispam Gateway (CASG) is an enterprise email filtering solution that blocks spam, email-borne viruses and other unwanted mail from reaching user in boxes. CASG can be quickly configured for any email system and can be up and running in no time.

Features and benefits include:

- Antispam protection for incoming mails
- Antispam protection for outgoing mails
- Enhances productivity of employees and servers
- Intuitive web interface facilitates easy use and configuration
- Easy management of domains email restrictions
- Whitelist / blacklist recipients and senders
- Archiving incoming mails



Guide Structure

This guide is intended to take you through the configuration and use of Comodo Antispam Gateway and is broken down into the following main sections. The guide can be navigated using the bookmark links on the left.

- Release Notes A list of new features that have been appeared in the CASG.
- Purchasing License How to purchase CASG licenses.

Adding More Users, Domains Or Time To Your Account - Describes how to obtain domains, add more users to your account.

- License Information Describes how to keep track of subscription status and various license related alerts.
- Getting Started Describes how to configure your mail server with the CASG service
 - Incoming Filtering Configuration
 - Outgoing Filtering Configuration
- The Administrative Interface Provides a snapshot of main functional areas of CASG.
 - Logging-in to the Administrative Interface How to login into the CASG interface.
 - The Dashboard Area Describes briefly about Domain management, Account management, Customer management and Statistics area.
 - **Domain Management** Detailed explanation on how to add domains, edit domain and manage domains. This section also deals with adding users to whitelist and blacklist and view log reports.
 - Audit Log Detailed explanation on how to view and export log reports for all the domains in the account.
 - Account Management Detailed explanation on how to add new administrators and change login passwords, subscription to periodical reports and configure language for messages from CASG.
 - Customer Management Provides information on accounts.
- CASG Reports An Overview An Overview of the Domain and Quarantine summary reports periodically generated and sent to the administrators and users by CASG.
- Appendix 1 CASG Error Codes
- Appendix 2 CASG Comparison Table
- Appendix 3 Troubleshooting LDAP
- Appendix 4 Useful Links

1.1 Release Notes

Version History		
Version Number	List of Changes	
Version 2.4	 Added ability to create whitelist/blacklist rules for adding senders to whitelist/blacklist Added ability for admins and users to add senders to whitelist/balcklist from the Archive interface Added 'Quarantine release' and 'Report spam' reports for administrators Geolocation restriction feature added that allows to create access control policies Added ability to forward mails from one user to another user in the same domain 	
Version 2.2	 Added 'User auto-import report' for administrators. The report contains information about all auto-imported users under each domain. Added notification for user-auto-import events Added ability to specify blacklist/whitelist senders by TLD Added ability to import sender whitelists/blacklists per user from CSV file. End users can reply to emails from mail archive 	

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Comodo Antispam Gateway - Administrator Guide

	• End users will be notified when emails are quarantined that were addressed to them. They can open the quarantined email by clicking the link in the notification email.
Version 2. 1	Added more audit events
	Added Users auto import
	Added Relay restrictions
Version 2.0	New user interface
	Added Domain Audit Log feature, which enable administrators to view the events for selected domains in customer's account
	Customers can purchase storage space for archiving incoming mails
	Added more audit events
	Added ability to whitelist / blacklist senders for each user
	Various bug fixes
Version 1.12	Added Audit Log feature, which enable administrators to view the events for all the domains in customer's account
	Various bug fixes
Version 1.11	Added ability to assign group permissions for administrators
	Added ability to login to CASG service via CAM credentials
	Administrators can unlock users immediately who were locked out after three unsuccessful attempts to login
	Added ability to customize notification emails
	Added ability to configure number of users for each domain belonging to an account
	Various bug fixes
Version 1.10	Added ability to import users from Active Directory server of Domain, through LDAP
	Added ability to administrators to receive quarantine request emails through alternative email address(es)
	Added ability to export configured Recipient Whitelist, Sender Whitelist, Recipient Blacklist and Sender Blacklist to CSV files
Version 1.9	Added ability to assign group permissions to multiple users and filtered users
	Added a user ability to search for logs of all domain
	Added 'Reset to default' button for Incoming Spam Detection settings
	 Added 'Include results from the last minutes' parameter to the Incoming & Outgoing Log search pages
	Added user login audits, including name of user, IP, logged time and session duration
Version 1.8	Added option for administrators to configure idle session timeout period
	Various bug fixes
Version 1.7	Added option to purchase multiple licenses for single domain or multiple domains
	 Added new feature - Groups & Permissions. Allows administrators to create groups and configure permission levels for each group. Ability for administrators to add users to groups with preset policies.
	Users in Power group can release quarantined emails without administrator's approval

	Added ability for administrators to blacklist senders from Quarantine interface
	New option for administrators to import users to whitelist / blacklist from csv format files
	Added ability for administrators to import aliases from csv format files
	• Added new options for report generation - Ability for administrators to receive global reports for all domains and domain level report for selected domain
	Login As button removed disabling an administrator to login as another administrator
	Email size restriction - Administrators to contact Comodo if more than 250 MB email size is required
	Various bug fixes
Version 1.6	Added Released Emails, Blacklisted Emails and Whitelisted Emails features in Email Management
	 Added ability for administrators to release or reject users' request to release quarantined emails
	 Added ability for administrators to accept or reject users' request to add senders to whitelist or blacklist
	Email notifications to administrators and users for requests such as to release quarantined mails, add senders to whitelist or blacklist
	Added ability for administrators to prioritize domain routes using drag and drop feature
	New option for administrators to set number of quarantined mails to be displayed per page
	New option to stop empty reports from being sent to recipients
	Right-click options to open links in new tab or new window
	Various bug fixes
Version 1.5	Added outgoing (SMTP) user management support
	Added email aliases support
	Added the ability for administrators to clear outgoing domain callout cache
	Added the ability for administrators to search for a specific outgoing email message
Version 1.4	Added periodical Domain and Quarantine summary reports feature
	 Added ability for administrators to set language for messages displayed/sent by CASG according to their location
	Added automatic locking feature - the CASG account will be locked if the administrator/user login attempts fail for set number of times due to incorrect entry of username/password
	Added ability for administrators to view quarantined email message content through a new CASG window
Version 1.3	User interface improvements
	Embedded links to on-line help
	Ability to configure the number of days for which logs are available
	New options for domain settings
	Various bug fixes
Version 1.2	Added licensing options
	Fixed various bugs
Version 1 1	Added ability for administrators to view email message content through the CASC interface
VG151011 1.1	- Added ability for administrators to view email message content through the CASG intende

	 Added ability to report spam in multiple formats to Comodo for potential global blacklisting Added ability to quickly switch the domain that is currently being managed Added ability to reset 'Blocked Extensions' list to default values
Version 1.0	 Added Mail Quarantine feature Added Whitelist / Blacklist pages Added Domain management feature Added Customer management Added Account management

1.2 Purchasing License

In order to get started with CASG, you must first purchase the service then configure the service. You have the option to purchase multiple licenses for single or more domains. The number of users and domains that are allowed for all the licenses purchased will be added and displayed in the **Customer Info** page. Follow the 'Buy Now' link on the website to purchase Antispam Gateway. Your Comodo Antispam Gateway account will be created once the signup process is complete - please refer to the email you receive after signup or activation. You can now login into the account with your username and password.

Note: A free version of CASG with limited features is also available for those who would like to try the application before purchasing a paid version. Please refer to **Appendix 2 - CASG Comparison Table** for more details on the features available for free and paid CASG versions.

You can view the license details in the main interface after activation. See the section 'License Information' for more details.

1.3 Adding more Users, Domains or Time to your Account

New users, domains and license term extensions as well as multiple licenses can be added to your account by logging into your CAM account at https://accounts.comodo.com/. Please read on for a step-by-step guide to this process.

To create CAM account

 Visit the Comodo Accounts Manager page at https://accounts.comodo.com/. The 'Register or Log In' page will be displayed.

elp Contacts		SignUp Login
Welcome		
Please enter your login	and password	
	Login:	
	Password:	
	*Login & Password are case-sensitive	

• Click the 'Create New Account' link. The Signup page for all the services offered by Comodo will be displayed.

Contacts	SignUp Login
Up	
p to Comodo Backup Enterprise Service	
p to Antispam Gateway Service	
p to Affiliate System Service	
p to LogInPro Service	
p to Comodo System Utilities Service	
p to TrustConnect Service	
p to Comodo Internet Security Service	
p to Comodo Online Storage Service	
p to livePCsupport Service	
p to Mobile Device Management Service	
p to Comodo Web Application Firewall Service	
p to DNSCOM Service	
p to WebInspector Service	
p to Endpoint Security Manager Service	

- Click 'Sign Up to Antispam Gateway'. Select the subscription package you want from the list. You have the option to purchase a single domain license or multi-domain license:
 - Single Domain License One email domain. For example, xyz.com or abc.xyz.com, can be configured along with a total number of licensed users.

Multi-Domain License - More than one email domain. For example, you can configure xyz.com, abc.xyz.com, abc.org along with a total number of licensed users across all your domains.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*	Comodo Antispam Gateway
1 Signup Information	Confirmation > 3 Order Summary
Comodo Sign-Up Page	
 Monthly ○ Quarterly ○ Annually ○ Comodo Antispam Gateway 1 Doma 	Biannually ◎ Triennial ◎ Other ain 5 Users (1 domain, 5 users) at \$7.00 for 1 month
-Without additional domains-	
-Without additional users-	
-Without additional archive space-	

Customer Information (an * indicates required fields)

Choose the term for your new license

.

- If you do not have a base package or if you want to extend your license for the chosen term, select the checkbox at the left of the first drop-down and choose the base package from the first drop-down
- If you already have a base package and you want to add additional domains, users and/or subscribe for additional
 archive space, choose your requirements from the respective drop-downs
- Enter the User Details and Contact Information in the respective sections.
- If you already have an account with Comodo, select the 'Yes' radio button. You will only need to enter your Email Address/Login ID, Password, and Contact Information.



Customer Information (an * indicates require	ed fields)		
When paying by credit card, the billing information st please ensure that your first and last name are enter	hould be exactly as it appears (red as they appear on your car	on your credit card statement. Fo d.	or credit card verification,
User Details			
Are you an existing Comodo customer? 🔘 Yes 🖲 No		_	
Email*			
Email is case-sensitive			
Password [*] (8 characters min.)]	
Password is case-sensitive			
Password Confirmation*]	

Street Address*		
Address2		
City [*]		
Country*	United States	•
State or Province	Unknown	•
Postal Code [*]		
Billing Information		
The same as Contact Information		

Note: Fields marked with * are mandatory.

• Select your payment method and complete the required payment fields:

Payment Options	
PayPar	
o 🎰 🚾 🔤	
Purchase Order	
When paying by credit card, the billing information s please ensure that your first and last name are ente	hould be exactly as it appears on your credit card statement. For credit card verification, red as they appear on your card.
Credit Card Details	
Credit Card Number [*]	
Security Code [*]	What is it?
Name exactly as it appears on your credit card [*]	
Expiration date*	January - 2015 -

• If you want to be kept informed about Comodo products and updates, select the 'Communication Options' checkbox:



Communication Options

- Ves! Please keep me informed about Comodo products, upgrades, special offers and pricing via email. Your information is safe with us!
 - Read and accept the 'End User License and Subscriber Agreement' by selecting 'I accept the Terms and Conditions' checkbox.

Note: The checkbox is enabled only after reading the full agreement by scrolling the page.

Terms and Conditions



I accept the Terms and Conditions



Click the 'Continue' button to move to the 'Confirmation' step.

Help	Contacts	SignUp	Login
V	Signup Information > 2 Confirmation > 3 Order Summary		
Or	der Confirmation		
Pleas	se confirm your order:		
	Product Product terms	Full pric	:e
Como	odo Antispam Gateway 1 Domain 5 Users Monthly		\$7.00
	Total Amount:		\$7.00
	Place Order Cancel		

· Review your order details and click the 'Place Order' button to confirm your order

Your order summary will be displayed.



Thank you for your purchase. Your order is complete and the confirmation will be sent to your email shortly.

	Subscri	ption Details			
Product Name		License Key			
Comodo Antispam Gat	eway	759%010-4#5#-4043-#	de1-2:8ec8df566e		
INVOICE NUMBER	13953171-l2	SUBSCRIPTION ID	CONTRACTOR .		

Order	Details
ORDER NUMBER	13953171-1
ORDER DATE	2015-01-20
ORDER TOTAL	\$0.00
SUBSCRIPTION EXPIRES ON	March 21, 2015

How to get started: We will send you an email explaining how to download and install your Comodo Software. You will be asked to enter your License Key during the installation process.

You can access your Comodo Account via https://accounts.comodo.com/account/login. This login provides you with the ability to modify you password, add subscriptions for other products, change billing and contact information, and review the ongoing status of your service.

[Print]

[Start using Comodo Antispam Gateway]

You will receive a confirmation email which includes help on how to log into your account and configure your DNS MX records.

After purchasing a CASG license, you will automatically become an administrator in CASG. Repeat the process for purchasing another CASG license. The number of users and domains that are allowed for all the licenses purchased will be added and displayed in the **Customer Info** page.

1.4 License Information

After purchasing your license, we advise you to keep track of your usage limits and the number of days remaining on your license(s) to avoid service interruptions. You have the option to upgrade or downgrade your license as per your requirements. You will begin to receive license renewal reminders via email before the expiration of license(s).

You can view your account status in the 'Customer Management' area in the main interface.

- Click 'Customer Info' from the 'Customer management' drop-down menu in the left hand side navigation area.
- The image below shows an example of a customer who has purchased multiple licenses:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

СОМОДО Antispam Gateway	Quarantine: 0 Relea	ase requests: 0 Whitel	ist requests: 0 Blackl	ist requests: 0	L My Account			
Go!	Dashboard / Customer info)						
🕜 Dashboard	Customer inf	ō			Help			
Domains	Name : Demo Cus	stomer						
😥 Audit log	CAM login : julius@dit	hersconstruction.com						
Account management	CAM email : julius@dit	Memail:julius@dithersconstruction.com						
🥵 Customer management 🛛 🗸	Totals							
Customer info	Max. number of users 5	5						
Manage report subscriptions	Number of domains 2							
Email template settings	Max. number of domain	ns 2						
	Disk space 2.1 MB							
	Subscriptions							
	Max. number of users	Max. number of domain	License expiration date	Disk quota (GB)	Enabled			
	0	0	Oct 28, 2015	2	true			
	0	2	Oct 28, 2015	0	true			
	5	0	Oct 28, 2015	0	true			
	End-User License	and Subscriber Agre	ement					
	THIS AGREEMEN	Com IT CONTAINS A BINDIN CAREFULLY BEFORE	odo AntiSpam Gatev IG ARBITRATION CLA ACCEPTING ITS TER	vay 2 AUSE. PLEASE REA MS AND CONDITIO	D THE AGREEMENT NS.			
	IMPORTANT - PLEASE RI ANTISPAM GATEWAY ("SE	EAD THESE TERMS CARE ERVICES"). BY DOWNLOAI	FULLY BEFORE DOWNL DING, INSTALLING, OR U	OADING, INSTALLING, SING THE SERVICES (OR USING COMODO DR BY CLICKING ON "I			

In the 'Customer Info' panel you will find the details of subscription(s) for your account, such as number of users, number of domains and the space available for archiving mails. For multiple licenses, the number of users and domains that are allowed for all the licenses purchased will be added and displayed in the Totals column.

- Name: Displays the name of the account.
- CAM Login: Displays the login user name for the account in Comodo Accounts Manager (CAM) at https://accounts.comodo.com. The administrator can use this login username to log in to CAM for purchasing additional licenses and renewal of existing licenses.
- CAM email: Displays the email address for the account as registered at CAM.

Account Summary

- Number of users Displays the current number of users for all domains on the account.
- Max. Number of users The maximum number of users that can be added as per all the subscriptions made for the account. The total number of users across all domains cannot exceed this number.
- Number of domains Displays the number of domains on the account.
- Max. number of domains The maximum number of domains that can be configured as per all the subscriptions made for the account.
- Disk quota The maximum disk space allocated for mail archiving.
- Disk space Displays the disk space currently used by the mail archive.

Details on Subscriptions

• Max. number of users- The maximum number of users that can be added for the account as per the specific subscription, that is, number of users cannot exceed the number given in this field for all domains included.

- Max. number of domains The maximum number of domains that can be configured as per the specific subscription.
- License expiration date Provides details about the expiry date of the license for the specific subscription.
- Disk quota (GB) Displays the space available for archiving all incoming messages.
- Enabled Displays whether the subscription is active or not.

End-User License and Subscriber Agreement

End-User License and Subscriber Agreement - Displays the complete End-User License and Subscriber Agreement.

The 'Customer Info' panel alerts the administrator about license(s) expiration date and if Domain/Users limit is exceeded.

Administrators will start receiving license renewal reminders via email 30 days (default) before your license(s) are due to expire.

Note: The number of days before expiration of license that you start to receive license renewal reminders and the number of reminders per day that you receive depends on the settings configured in CASG.

An example of license renewal reminder is shown below:

Dear Customer,

Your Comodo Antispam Gateway account is due to expire in 5 days.

Please renew your subscription using your account page or contact support.

Please note that on 03-06-2012 your account will be suspended for 60 days and after that all your data will eliminated.

If you have multiple licenses and if one of them has expired, then the number of domains and users allowed for that license will be deducted from the total number of allowed domains and users. No error message will be displayed if the usage is still limited within the total domains and users allowed for the remaining license(s).

An alert will be displayed at the top of the interface on the day when all the license(s) have expired. An example of the message is shown below.

Your subscription has expired, your account will be purged in 60 days, including all domains and quarantined emails, which will be irretrievable. Until that your Spam filters are disabled.

Note: The period after which all domains and quarantined emails for your account that will purged depends on the settings configured in CASG.

During the configured period after license expiry, your emails will continue to be delivered to your domain via CASG but without any spam filtering. During this period, you cannot add new domains and new users. Option to enable quarantine is also disabled and incoming Spam detection settings screen for every domain in your account will display that Quarantine is disabled. After the configured period, all domains and quarantined mails in CASG for your account will be purged.

Users of the account can use the service normally during this period. After the configured period, if a user tries to login with his/her credentials, 'Your login or password is incorrect' message will be displayed.

Administrators can upgrade or downgrade his/her account using Comodo Accounts Manager (CAM) at https://accounts.comodo.com/account/login. You can use the login details provided at the time of purchasing the service.

Note: Any license upgrade or downgrade for your account will not be effected immediately. However, the changes will be reflected in the interface after a certain period of time depending on the settings configured in CASG.

After downgrading your existing account or after a license has expired, if the number of domains and / or users is more than permitted, an upgrade subscription message will be displayed at the top of the CASG interface. Some examples of alert messages are shown below:

When the domain limit is exceeded:

Your domain limit exceeded by 1. Please lower number of your domains or buy new subscription.

You will not be able to add new domains until some of the current domains are removed. CASG filter will continue to function and you can add new users.

When the user limit is exceeded:

Your user limit exceeded by 2. Please lower number of your users or buy new subscription.

You will not be able to add new users until some of the current users are removed. CASG filter will continue to function and you can add new domains.

2 Getting Started

Once an account with Comodo for CASG has been created, the next step is configuring your mail server with the CASG service and setting up incoming and outgoing filtering. Click on the links below for more details.

- Incoming Filtering Configuration
 - Configuring your mail server
 - Configuring MX record
- Outgoing Filtering Configuration
 - Per-user authentication
 - Outgoing Smarthot setup

2.1 Incoming Filtering Configuration

This section explains how you have to configure your mail server and point your domain MX records to CASG service.

- Configuring your mail server
- Configuring MX record

2.1.1 Configuring Your Mail Server

Step 1: Disable Sender Policy Framework (SPF) check or add CASG service domain to SPF check whitelist.

The CASG service domains are:

- mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com
- mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com

If the above step is not carried out, the following error message may appear while adding a domain.

Dashboard / Domains	
Domains	Help
WARNING: Routes check is failed for given domain. Below is detailed response from mail server : SPF checker is unreachable	
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 🥒 Edit domain 👬 Manage domain	Refresh

Step 2: Add your domain to CASG service.

To add domain:

• Login to CASG system, go to domain management and add domain.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

	Add 🔟 Delete	🖉 Edit domain	î∳î Mana <u>c</u>	le domain		
Ad	ld domain					×
>	Doma	in domainname	e.com			s
н.	Destination route	es 🕂 domain d	dest route		25	\$
н.	Max. number of use	rs Unlimited				- 11
U.		Check routes	Save	Cancel		
15						

Step 3: Point mail server MX records to CASG service domain. See the next section 'Configuring MX Record' for more details.

2.1.2 Configuring MX Record

The next important step is to update the Mail Exchange (MX) records of your domain to point to the CASG service domain. Please ensure that you replace your old domain MX records with primary 'mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com' and secondary 'mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com'. If third-party MX servers are being used, then point the records to 'mxpool {1,2}.spamgateway.comodo.com'.

Background Note: The MX record is responsible for specifying the mail server to relay the incoming and outgoing email messages of a domain. A domain can have several MX records, each pointing to a mail server, with defined priority order. When an email is passed to/from your domain, the mail is handled by the first available mail server as per the priority. You can define new MX records or change the priority of them depending on how you want the mails to/from your domain has to be processed.

This section explains how to update your MX records so that all mails to/from your domain are passed through the CASG spam filtering service. Click the following links for detailed explanations based on the DNS software/web hosting service you use.

- Windows Server 2003/2008
- BIND (and the "named" daemon)
- Comodo DNS
- GoDaddy
- Enom
- Network Solutions
- Yahoo! SmallBusiness
- 1and1
- 4D Web Hosting
- DNS Park
- DreamHost



- DynDNS
- IX Web Hosting
- No-IP
- Cpanel

2.1.2.1 Updating MX Records in Windows 2003/2008 Server

- 1. Open Control Panel by clicking Start > Control Panel and click 'Administrative Tools'.
- 2. Select 'DNS'.
- 3. Open the 'Forward Lookup Zones' folder.
- 4. To back up the current configuration, right-click the sub-folder for the mail domain you are configuring, select 'export' from the context sensitive menu and save the configuration in a safe location.
- 5. Open the zone/domain sub-folder for that mail domain.
- 6. Delete all the existing MX records in that zone/domain.
- 7. Enter a new record for primary mail server with a lowest priority number and enter its FQDN value as mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com and click OK.
- 8. Enter a new record for secondary mail server with the next lowest priority number and enter its FQDN value as mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com and click OK.
- 9. Right-click the zone/domain folder and select 'Properties' from the pop-up menu.
- 10. Select the 'Start of Authority (SOA)' tab, click the 'Increment' button and click OK.

2.1.2.2 Updating MX Records on a host using BIND (and the 'named' daemon)

- 1. Make a backup copy of the zone file (or named.conf) that you intend to edit for MX record updates.
- 2. Open the Zone file for the mail domain you are configuring (or go to the part of named.conf being used for that zone)
- 3. Delete all the existing "MX" lines for that domain.
- 4. Enter a new "IN MX" record with the lowest preference value and enter the host name as " mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com" for the primary mail server.
- 5. Enter a new "IN MX" record with the next lowest preference value and enter the host name as " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com" for the secondary mail server.
- 6. Find the "@ IN SOA" record and increment the serial number (on the second line of the record).
- 7. Save the file and check it with named-checkconf.
- 8. Restart the 'named' daemon.

2.1.2.3 Updating MX Records for Comodo DNS

- 1. Log in to DNS.com administrative console at https://dns.com/login/ by entering your login email address and password.
- 2. Select the domain for which you want to update the MX records, from the "Select domain" drop down menu.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

DNS.CON	•	NEW: <u>Overage Insurance Plans</u>	Contact Help Log Out My Account User: admin@sample-domain.com Settings Billing
Overview Domains Home Overview	Groups	Geo Groups Reports	Select domain Select group
Add domain			Type keyword above to filler results sample-domain.com

3. Click the "View / Manage" button beside the row labeled "@ (mail)".

	Host name	Records Actions
agion or group of your choice.	(root)	1 View / Manage
	* (wildcard)	0 View / Manage
Select location (IPv4 Address)	www	0 View / Manage
600	@ (mail)	2 View / Manage

The existing MX records will be displayed at the left hand side pane.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Resource r	ecords	
e (main).sarripi	onv region or group of	
SetTecords for	any region of group of	your choice.
Create rec	ord	
Region:	Select location	
Ttl:	3600	
Priority:	0	
Answer:		
Save		
Olahal		
Global		Ó
www.sample	edomain.com. TTL: 36	:00
MX		
www.sample	edomain.com. TTL: 36	500
Create nev	N: Select type	~
	Gelect type	
Add		

- 4. Delete the existing records by clicking the thrash can icons.
- 5. Set the primary mail server. Under 'Create Record':
 - Enter TTL as 3600 (secs)
 - Enter "1" in the 'Priority' field to set higher priority for the primary server
 - Enter " mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com" in the 'Answer' field
 - Click 'Save'
- 6. Again click the "View / Manage" button beside the row labeled "@ (mail)" and set the secondary mail server. Under Create Record:
 - Enter TTL as 3600 (secs)
 - Enter "2" in the 'Priority' field to set lower priority for the secondary server
 - Enter " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com" in the 'Answer' field.
 - Click 'Save'

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

Setup should now be complete and mail filtering effected on all configured domains. If you experience problems, please open a ticket at **support.comodo.com** or call 1.888.COMODO (2666.6361) and have your account number ready. We have

experienced technicians on hand to help troubleshoot any configuration issues.

2.1.2.4 Updating MX Records for GoDaddy

- 1. Log in to GoDaddy administrative console at http://www.godaddy.com, by entering your customer number or login name, entering your password, and clicking the 'Secure Login' button.
- 2. Click 'My Domains' from the 'Domains' drop-down menu.



- 3. Select the domain for which you want to update the MX records, from the 'Domain Name' column.
- 4. Click 'Total DNS Control and MX Records' from the Details page.

<u>□·</u> <u>}</u> <u>3</u> .	2 8-	-			all -	0
Organize Looking Cash in U	pgrade Renew	Forward	Contact	Nameservers	Account Change	Cancel Domain
Status: Privacy: Business Registration: Domain Ownership Protection: Locked: Registered: Expires On: Auto Renew: CashPacking	Active (Refree Off (Add) Off (Add) Off (Add) Locked (Chan 2/14/2008 2/14/2009 (Re Off (Change)	sh Page) ge) mew Now	(Name Serr NS33.DOM/ NS34.DOM/ Total DNS: Total DNS: Total DNS: Forwardin Domain S-2	vers: (Last Upda AINCONTROL CO AINCONTROL CO (Available) (Availabl	te 5/12/2012)
Authorization Code:	Status) Send by Email					

5. Delete the existing MX records by clicking the 'X' buttons.

MX (Mail Exchange)				Reset to Default Settings	Add	Add New MX Record	
-	Priority	Host	Goes To		TTL	Actions	
٣	0	Q	smtp.secureserver.net		1 Hour	2 ×	
Г	10	Q	mailstore1.secureserver.net		1 Hour	2 ×	

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Click the 'Edit' button beside each and set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

6. Click 'Add New MX Record'. The interface for adding a new MX record will appear.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Comodo Antispam Gateway - Administrator Guide

		_
To create a new MX record for your doma Host Name, "Goes To. IP Address, and TTI	in; enter the priority value (0 - 9999) and complete the L Value fields; then click "Continue."	-
Note: The "Host Name" should be defined as you or "@" (Entering "@" will automatically insert you Record). If the MX Record is for the domain "ww should be entered as "www."	as your domain name (i.e., "domainnamegoeshere.com") ert your domain name as the host name for the MX n "www.domainnamegoeshere.com," the host name	
Priority:	1	
Host Name:	@	
Enter Goes To Address:	my_domainnet.psmtp.com	
TTL:	1 Hour 👻	
	The second	

To set the primary server:

- Enter "1" in the 'Priority' field.
- Enter "@" in the Host Name field.
- In the 'Enter Goes To Address' field, enter " mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com".
- Select '1 week' from the TTL drop-down.
- Click OK.

To set the secondary server:

- Click 'Add New MX Record' again. The interface for adding a new MX record will appear.
- Enter "2" in the 'Priority' field.
- Enter "@" in the Host Name field.
- In the 'Enter Goes To Address' field, enter " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com".
- Select '1 week' from the TTL drop-down.
- Click OK.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.5 Updating MX Records for Enom

- 1. Log in to Enom administrative console at https://www.enom.com/login.aspx by entering your 'Login ID', 'Password' and clicking 'Login'.
- 2. Click the 'Domains' tab and select 'My Domain Names'. 'Manage Domains' page will be opened
- 3. Choose the domain for which the MX records are to be updated.
- 4. Select the + icon under the 'Total DNS Control' list in the 'Domain Details' panel. A sub-list will appear.
- 5. Click 'Total DNS Control And MX Records'. The 'Manage MX Records and DNS Zone File panel' will appear.
- 6. Click 'Launch Total DNS Control Manager'. The 'DNS Manager' interface will appear.
- 7. Delete the existing MX records.

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Click the 'Edit' button beside each and set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

8. Click 'Add New MX Record'. The 'MX (Mail Exchangers) Record Wizard' will appear.

To set the primary server:



- Enter "1" in the 'Priority Value' field.
- Enter "@" in the Enter a Host Name field.
- In the 'Enter Goes To Address' field, enter " mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com".
- Select '1 week' from the TTL drop-down.
- Click 'Add'.

To set the secondary server:

- Enter "2" in the 'Priority Value' field.
- Enter "@" in the Enter a Host Name field.
- In the 'Enter Goes To Address' field, enter " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com".
- Select '1 week' from the TTL drop-down.
- Click 'Add'.
- 9. Click 'Continue'. The 'DNS Manager main page' will reappear when you've finished.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.6 Updating MX Records for Network Solutions

- 1. Log in to Network Solutions administrative console at https://www.networksolutions.com/manage-it/index.jsp by entering your 'User ID', 'Password', selecting 'Manage All Services' from 'Log-in to' drop-down and clicking 'Login'.
- Click 'Edit DNS' under 'DNS Settings'. (If this is the first time you are editing the DNS settings, then click 'Custom DNS Setting'). The 'Edit DNS' interface will appear.
- 3. Click 'Continue' in the 'DNS Manager-Advanced Tools'. The 'DNS Manager Advanced Tools' interface will appear.
- 4. Click Add/Edit in the 'Mail Servers' panel. The 'Mail Servers' table will be displayed.
- 5. Delete the existing MX records.

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Edit the 'Mail Servers' table to set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on for the existing records. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

6. Update the 'Mail Servers' table with the information in the following table.

Priority	Mail Server
1	mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com
2	mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com

7. Click 'Save'.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.7 Updating MX Records for Yahoo! Small Business

- 1. Log in to Yahoo! Small Business administrative console at https://login.yahoo.com/config/login_verify2 by entering your 'Yahoo ID', 'Password' and clicking 'Sign In'.
- 2. Click 'Domain' from he tool bar.
- 3. Click 'Manage Advanced DNS Settings'.
- 4. Click 'Change MX Records'.
- 5. Delete the existing MX records.

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Edit the 'MX Records to set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on for the existing records. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

- 6. Enter the MX record for primary email server as "mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com" in the first open text box.
- 7. Set the priority for the primary email server as "1"
- 8. Enter the MX record for secondary email server as " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com" in the second open text box.
- 9. Set the priority for the secondary email server as "2"
- 10. Click 'Submit'.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.8 Updating MX Records for 1and1

- 1. Log in to 1and1 administrative console at http://www.1and1.com/login by entering your 'Customer ID' (Account Number or Domain name), 'Password' and clicking 'Login'.
- 2. Click 'Administration' tab
- 3. Click 'Domains'. The 'Domain Overview' page will appear.
- 4. Choose the domain for which the MX records are to be updated.
- 5. Select 'Edit DNS Settings' from the DNS menu.
- 6. Click 'Advanced DNS Settings' and choose 'Other mail server' from the options.
- 7. Delete the existing MX records.

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Edit the 'MX Records to set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on for the existing records. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

8. Enter the MX 1/Prio and MX 2/Prio fields with the following information.

MX 1/Prio	mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com
MX 2/Prio	mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com

9. Click 'OK'.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.9 Updating MX Records for 4D Web Hosting

- 1. Log in to your 4D Web Hosting administrative console at https://members.4dwebhosting.com/ by entering your 'Username', 'Password' and clicking 'Login'.
- 2. Click 'Configure'.
- 3. Click 'MX Records' from the Configuration options.
- 4. Replace the top two records with the following:

Primary	mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com
Secondary	mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com



5. Click 'Update MX Records'.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.10 Updating MX Records for DNS Park

- 1. Log in to DNS Park administrative console at https://www.dnspark.net/signin.php.
- 2. Click 'DNS Hosting' from the left hand side navigation.
- 3. Choose the domain for which the MX records are to be updated.
- 4. Click 'Mail Records (MX)'.
- 5. Under 'MX Resource records',
 - Replace the hostname at 1st priority row with "mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com" and click 'Update'
 - Replace the hostname at 2nd priority row with "mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com" and click 'Update'
- 6. Delete other existing MX records.

Tip: If you do not want to delete these records at this time, you can do it later, after your changes have taken effect.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.11 Updating MX Records for DreamHost

- 1. Log in to DreamHost administrative control panel at https://panel.dreamhost.com/ by entering your email address/Web ID and Web panel password.
- 2. Click 'Mail' from the left hand side navigation and select 'MX' from the options.
- 3. Click 'Edit' beside the domain name for which the MX records are to be updated.
- 4. Delete all existing MX records under 'Custom MX Records'.
- 5. In the first two text boxes, enter:
 - "mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com"
 - " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com"
- 6. Click 'Update your custom MX records now!'

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.12 Updating MX Records for DynDNS

- 1. Log in to DynDNS administrative console at https://account.dyn.com/entrance/ by entering your Username and password.
- 2. Click 'My Services'.
- 3. Click 'Custom DNS' beside the domain for which the MX records are to be updated, under 'Zone Level Services'.
- 4. Select all the entries under 'Mail eXchanger Records' and click 'Delete MX'.
- 5. Click 'Add New MX'.

.

- 6. Set the primary mail server:
 - Enter " mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com"
 - Select '5' for preference to set higher priority for the primary server



- Click 'Modify MX'
- Click 'Return to...'
- 7. Set the secondary mail server
 - Enter " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com"
 - Select '10' for preference to set lower priority for the secondary server
 - Click 'Modify MX'
 - Click 'Return to...'

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.13 Updating MX Records for IX Web Hosting

- 1. Log in to IX Web Hosting administrative control panel at https://manage.ixwebhosting.com/index.php by entering your login email address and password.
- 2. Click 'Manage' under 'Hosting Account'.
- 3. Choose the domain for which the MX records are to be updated.
- 4. Disable the existing MX records by clicking the 'On' button.
- 5. Click 'Edit' next to 'DNS Configuration'.
- 6. Delete the existing MX records.

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Edit the 'MX Records to set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on for the existing records. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

- 7. Click 'Add DNS MX Record'.
- 8. Enter the primary and secondary mail servers one by one as given in the table below. Click 'Submit' after entering each record.

Name	Data	Data (Second box)
Leave Blank	1	mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com
Leave Blank	2	mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.14 Updating MX Records for No-IP

- 1. Log in to No-IP administrative console at https://www.no-ip.com/login/ by entering your login email address and password.
- 2. Click 'Host/Redirects' from the left hand side navigation.
- 3. Click 'Modify' beside the domain name for which the MX records are to be updated.
- 4. Navigate to 'Mail Options' section at the bottom of the page
- 5. Replace the MX record entry at the first field with "mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com"
- 6. Replace the MX record entry at the second field with "mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com"
- 7. Delete the other MX records.

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Edit the 'MX Records to set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on for the existing records. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.1.2.15 Updating MX Records in CPanel

This section explains how to update MX records for your domain if you or your web hosting service provider use CPanel as webhosting control interface.

- 1. Login to your administrative console. CPanel will be opened.
- 2. Click 'MX Entry' icon under 'Mail'



The MX Entry Maintenance panel will be opened.

- 3. Select the domain for which the MX record has to be changed from the Domains area.
- 4. Ensure that 'Local Mail Exchanger' option is selected under 'Email Routing'. If not, select the option and click the 'Change' button.



Domain: mydomain	.com
Email Routing	
O Automatically E	etect Configuration (recommended) more »
Ocal Mail Exc	hanger more »
🔿 Backup Mail Ex	changer more »
O Remote Mail Ex	changer more »
Change	
Current setting is sho	own in bold .
A Warning: Setting	the wrong option here can break receiving mail on your server. If you are at all unsure about
Add New Record	
Priority	n and a second se

5. Delete the entries under 'MX Records' by clicking the 'Delete' links

Deicerity: 0		
Destination:		
Add New	Record	
rds		
rds	-	
rds Priority	DESTINATION	Actions

Tip: If you do not want to delete the existing records at this moment, you can set them with lower priority. Click 'Edit' and set the priority with higher numbers like 10, 20 and so on. You can delete these records at a later time after your changes have taken effect.

- 6. Set the primary mail server under 'Add New Record'
 - Enter '0' in Priority field
 - Enter " mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com" in the Destination field
 - Click 'Add New record'. The new MX Record pointing to CASG service will be added



New Record			
Priority: 0 Destination: mxsrv1 Add N	spamgateway.col 📀 ew Record		
PRIORITY	DESTINATION	0ettose	
PRIUKIII	DESTINATION	ACTIONS	

- 7. Set the secondary mail server under 'Add New Record'
 - Enter '1' in Priority field
 - · Enter " mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com" in the Destination field
 - Click 'Add New record'. The new MX Record pointing to CASG service will be added

Priority Destination	Add Now Record	
Records Priority	DESTINATION	Actions
O	mxsrv1.spamgateway.comodo.com	Edit Delete
1	mxsrv2.spamgateway.comodo.com	Edit Delete
10	mydomain.com	Edit Delete
	Home • Trademarks • Help • Documentation • Contact • Logou	t

The MX records for your domain are updated now. But it may take up to 48 hours for the changes to take effect.

2.2 Outgoing Filtering Configuration

CASG allows you to configure outgoing filter that is independent of incoming email filtering. You can set up outgoing email filter for each user or if that is too cumbersome, you can set up the filtering server as a smarthost. Click the the following links for more details.

- Per-user authentication
- Outgoing Smarthost setup

Note: You can use only one of the methods, Per-user authentication or Outgoing Smarthost setup, for outgoing email filtering.

2.2.1 Per-User Authentication

To set up outgoing filtering for a user, make sure that the user is a valid outgoing user. This can be done in the Outgoing section

of the Manage Domain interface. You can also configure outgoing user to represent an IP address and anybody from this configured IP can send mail. To add an outgoing user, click 'Users' and 'Add' in the 'Outgoing users' interface. You can also import users from CSV file or from Incoming users. See the section **Users** to know how to configure an outgoing user.

2.2.2 Outgoing Smarthost setup

If you use a dynamic IP or you are unable to get the proper PTR records set up then you might need to consider using a smarthost. In this case all outgoing messages would be sent to CASG mailserver and the actual recipient would be contacted by CASG mailserver itself. Please note that for smarthost option, email user authorization should be handled on your side, either by IP address or by using SMTP AUTH.

A smarthost allows an SMTP server to route email to an intermediate mail server. This can ease mail server management.

This enables you to route messages over a connection that may be more direct or less costly than other routes. The smart host is similar to the route domain option for remote domains. The difference is that, after a smart host is designated, all outgoing messages are routed to that server. With a route domain, only messages for the remote domain are routed to a specific server. If you set up a smart host, you can still designate a different route for a remote domain. The route domain setting overrides the smart host setting.

You can route all incoming / outgoing messages for remote domains through a smarthost instead of sending them directly to the domain to reduce e-mail spam from the recipient's mail server via the default SMTP port.

- Configuring QMail
- Configuring PostFix
- Configuring Sendmail
- Configuring Exchange 2000/2003
- Configuring Exchange 2007/2010
- Configuring Exim
 - Configuring Exim / cPanel
 - Configuring Exim / Directadmin

2.2.2.1 Configuring QMail to use a Smarthost

Routing all mails to a smarthost

The file where SMARTHOST relaying to smarthost settings are kept is named smtproutes and is usually found in /var/qmail/control/. We use the hostname ' mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com' on port 587 as outgoing server:

echo: mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com:587" > /var/qmail/control/smtproutes

This command will set qmail that all your mails will be routed to mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com:587 (will remove other existing lines).

Routing all mails for a specific domain to a smarthost :

Note: The information below relates to a very specific customer requirement and is not recommended for most deployments. A configuration like this can cause problems which will be hard to troubleshoot. Unless you are sure you need to use this setup, please explore the other available options for routing mail.

echo "example.com: mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com:587" >> /var/qmail/control/smtproutes

This will route outgoing email to "example.com" via the smarthost. (rest of the lines will be kept).

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

2.2.2.2 Configuring PostFix to use a Smarthost

Routing all mails to a smarthost :

These instructions assume the postfix config files live in /etc/postfix/main.cf

In/*etc/postfix/main.cf*add the line:

relayhost = mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com:587

Routing all mails for a specific domain to a smarthost :

Note: The information below relates to a very specific customer requirement and is not recommended for most deployments. A configuration like this can cause problems which will be hard to troubleshoot. Unless you are sure you need to use this setup, please explore the other available options for routing mail.

Add a line to *letc/postfix/transport*:

example.com smtp: mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com:587

generate a postmap file :

postmap hash:/etc/postfix/transport

To use the transport file, add or edit a line in /etc/postfix/main.cf:

transport_maps = hash:/etc/postfix/transport

Restart Postfix and all mail. The mail for selected domains should go trough the Smarthost.

2.2.2.3 Configuring Sendmail to use a Smarthost

Routing all mails to a smarthost :

Edit/etc/sendmail.cf and add the following line:

DSmxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com

Restart Sendmail.



2.2.2.4 Configuring Exchange 2000/2003 to use a Smarthost

Routing all mails to a smarthost :

- In the Exchange System Manager, expand the Administrative Groups container.
- Expand the desired administrative group, and expand the Routing Groups container.
- Expand the routing group you need to work with, right-click the Connectors folder, and select New.
- Select SMTP Connector.
- On the General tab, enter a name to identify the connector.
- Select Forward All Mail Through This Connector To The Following Smart Hosts, and enter mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com
- Default SMTP Server -> Properties -> Delivery Tab -> Outbound Connections -> TCP Port set to 587.

Routing all mails for a specific domain to a smarthost :

Note: The information below relates to a very specific customer requirement and is not recommended for most deployments. A configuration like this can cause problems which will be hard to troubleshoot. Unless you are sure you need to use this setup, please explore the other available options for routing mail.

Do all steps mentioned **above** and continue on with the following:

- Under Local Bridgeheads, click Add, and select the SMTP server that will become the SMTP bridgehead for its routing group.
- On the Address Space tab, click Add, select SMTP, and click OK.
- In the E-Mail Domain box, add the name of the remote location's e-mail domain (e.g., example.com), and click OK.
- Click OK three times to exit the SMTP connector configuration.
- Restart the Microsoft Exchange Routing Engine service and the SMTP service.

2.2.2.5 Configuring Exchange 2007/2010 to use a Smarthost

Routing all mails to a smarthost :

A Send Connector must already have been created and configured correctly on the Hub Transport server.

- Open Exchange Management Console.
- Click on the '+' next to Organization Configuration.
- Select Hub Transport and select the 'Send Connectors' tab.
- Right-click on the existing Send Connector, select 'Properties' and go to the Network tab.
- Select "Route mail through the following smart hosts:" and click 'Add'.
- Enter mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com (you need to use port 587).

If you have more then one Smarthost, repeat the previous two steps.

The changes to the Send Connector will take effect immediately without you having to reboot the server or restart any services.

In order to change the port to 587 you will have to issue the following command in the Exchange Powershell Console:

Set-SendConnector -identity "NAME OF CONNECTOR" -Port:587

Restart the transport service.



Routing all mails to a smarthost with Username Authentication:

A Send Connector must already have been created and configured correctly on the Hub Transport server.

- Open Exchange Management Console.
- Click on the + next to Organization Configuration.
- · Select Hub Transport and select the 'Send Connectors' tab.
- · Right-click on the existing Send Connector, select 'Properties' and go to the 'Network' tab.
- · Select "Route mail through the following smart hosts:" and click 'Add'.
- Enter mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com, mxpool2.spamgateway.comodo.com in the FQDN section.
- Click 'Change' under the smart-host authentication.
- · Select 'Basic Authentication' and tick the TLS box .
- Add your newly created username and password.
- Click 'OK '.

The changes to the Send Connector will take effect immediately without you having to reboot the server or restart any services.

In order to change the port to 587 you will have to issue the following command in the Exchange Powershell Console: Set-SendConnector -identity "NAME OF CONNECTOR" -Port:587

Restart the transport service.

2.2.2.6 Configuring Exim to use a Smarthost

Routing all mails to a smarthost :

To configure the mailserver Exim, edit your Exim configuration file (e.g. /etc/exim/exim.conf).

Add in the routers section (after begin routers):

```
spamgateway_smarthost_router:
driver = manualroute
transport = spamgateway_smarthost_transport
route_list = $domain mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com::587
no_more
```

Make sure the local mail route is before smarthost, if you don't want local mail to be forwarded. Add in the transports section (after **begin transports**):

```
spamgateway_smarthost_transport:
    driver = smtp
    hosts require tls = *
```

Routing all mails for a specific domain to a smarthost:

Note: The information below relates to a very specific customer requirement and is not recommended for most deployments. A configuration like this can cause problems which will be hard to troubleshoot. Unless you are sure you need to use this setup, please explore the other available options for routing mail.

Put the domain in place of the \$domain value in the route_list (above). For multiple domains you can use:

route list = domain.example.com mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com::587 ;

domain.example.org mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com::587

Restart Exim for the changes to take effect.

2.2.2.6.1 Configuring Exim / cPanel to use a Smarthost

Routing all mails to a smarthost :

Go to the "Exim Configuration Editor" in WHM. Choose "Advanced Editor". Add in the routers section (after **begin routers**, and after the **democheck:** router block):

```
smarthost_dkim:
    driver = manualroute
    domains = !+local_domains
    require_files = "+/var/cpanel/domain_keys/private/${sender_address_domain}"
    transport = remote_smtp_smart_dkim
    route_list = $domain mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com::587
smarthost_regular:
    driver = manualroute
    domains = !+local_domains
    transport = remote_smtp_smart_regular
    route_list = $domain mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com::587
```

Then add in the transports section (after begin transports):

```
remote smtp smart dkim:
 driver = smtp
 hosts_require tls = *
  interface = ${if exists {/etc/mailips}{${lookup{$sender address domain}}}
lsearch*{/etc/mailips}{$value}{}}
  helo data = ${if exists {/etc/mailhelo}{${lookup{$sender address domain}}
lsearch*{/etc/mailhelo}{$value}{$primary hostname}}}{$primary hostname}}
dkim domain = $sender address domain
dkim selector = default
dkim private key = "/var/cpanel/domain keys/private/${dkim domain}"
dkim canon = relaxed
remote smtp smart regular:
  driver = smtp
 hosts require tls = *
  interface = ${if exists {/etc/mailips}{${lookup{$sender address domain}}}
lsearch*{/etc/mailips}{$value}{}}
  helo data = ${if exists {/etc/mailhelo}{${lookup{$sender address domain}
lsearch*{/etc/mailhelo}{$value}{$primary_hostname}}}{$primary_hostname}}
```

Save the configuration. All the outgoing mail will be relayed trough the filterserver and accept original and DKIM signed emails.

Routing all mails to a smarthost with SMTP Authentication:

- · Go to the "Exim Configuration Editor" in WHM.
- · Choose "Advanced Editor". do not include "begin authenticators".
- Otherwise, simply append our 4 lines and leave out our "begin authenticators".

begin authenticators



```
spamgateway_login:
driver = plaintext
public_name = LOGIN
client send = : username@example.com : yourUserPassword
```

Add a Router in the Router Configuration Box.

```
send_via_spamgateway:
driver = manualroute
domains = ! +local_domains
transport = spamgateway_smtp
route_list = "* mxpooll.spamgateway.comodo.com::587 byname"
host_find_failed = defer
no more
```

Add a Transport to the Transport Configuration Box.

```
spamgateway_smtp:
driver = smtp
hosts = mxpooll.spamgateway.comodo.com
hosts_require_auth = mxpooll.spamgateway.comodo.com
hosts_require_tls = mxpooll.spamgateway.comodo.com
```

Restart Exim.

Extra: Routing all mails for a specific domain to a smarthost with individual outgoing accounts:

To be able to set custom settings/limits for outgoing users, use the information above (Routing with SMTP Authentication) with a small change. Use this:

instead of the client_send in the previous example.

To create a file called /etc/exim_spamgateway with the following structure, use this :

```
domain1.com: user=user@domain1.com pass=abc
domain2.com: user=user@domain2.com pass=xyz
```

Extra: Limiting Outgoing for certain domains

This option can be combined with the individual accounts configuration to restrict outgoing only to specific domains. You can add the following entry (underneath domains) in the router :

senders = ^.*@domain1.com : ^.*@domain2.com

2.2.2.6.2 Configuring Exim / Directadmin to use a Smarthost

- Edit your Exim configuration file (e.g. /etc/exim.conf).
- Add in the routers section (after begin routers):



```
spamgateway_smarthost_router:
    driver = manualroute
    domains = ! +local_domains
    ignore_target_hosts = 127.0.0.0/8
    condition = "${perl{check_limits}}"
    transport = spamgateway_smarthost_transport
    route_list = $domain mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com::587
    no more
```

- This replaces the existing "lookuphost:" router which should be commented.
- · Add in the transports section (after begin transports):

```
spamgateway_smarthost_transport:
    driver = smtp
    hosts_require_tls = *
```

Restart Exim.

3 The Administrative Interface

The Administrative Console is the nerve center of Comodo Antispam Gateway (CASG), allowing administrators to add domains, add administrators and users, manage accounts and more.


Once logged-in, the administrator can navigate to different areas of the console by clicking the tabs at the left hand side.

Main Functional Areas

- **Dashboard** Allows administrator to view graphical summaries of domain quota usage, user quota usage, archive quota usage, details of domain and user license expiration. See **The Dashboard Area** for more details.
- **Domains** Provides a snapshot of domains in CASG for your account and serves as a launchpad for adding, deleting, editing and managing domains. In this area the administrators can set filters, view quarantined mails, set email restrictions. The administrator can also view the log record of actions such as accepting whitelist request, accepting blacklist request and so on. See **Domain Management** for more details.
- Audit Log Allows administrators with appropriate privileges to view a record of actions initiated by users and administrators for all domains belonging to an account. See Audit Log for more details.
- Account Management Enables the administrator to add other administrators, delete or edit existing administrators. Currently logged in administrator also can change his/her password, manage their subscription to periodical domain and quarantine summary reports in this area. An administrator also can create user and administrator groups and permissions can be configured for these groups. Users and administrators then can be added to these groups that will impose a common permission policy for them. The administrators can also view a user history for *all* domains within a particular date range. See Account Management for more details.
- Customer Management Enables the administrator to view the details of the customer such as name, maximum number of users, maximum number of domains, incoming archive space, license expiration date and whether the customer is enabled or not. Also the administrator can manage the subscription of periodical domain and quarantine summary reports for the customer, configure email template settings for the messages sent from CASG. See Customer Management for more details.

Clicking the **support.comodo.com** link at the bottom of interface takes you to the Comodo support web page, an online knowledge base and support ticketing system. The fastest way to get further assistance in case you find any problem using CASG.

Various interfaces displays a help button *set the top right side of the interface.* Clicking on this help button will take you to the respective help page of CASG online help guide for more detailed explanation.

3.1 Logging-in to the Administrative Interface

As CASG is a web application, you can login into your account using any Internet browser by entering https://antispamgateway.comodo.com/admin/ in the address bar of the browser.

COMODO Antispam Gateway
🔒 Administrative Interface
Username
Password
Login



Login to the interface with your CASG username and password.

In order to ensure safety, CASG will lock the account if the login attempts fail for more than three attempts due to incorrect Username or Password. To unlock the account the administrator can contact their Comodo Account Manager.

The threshold number of unsuccessful login attempts before locking the account can also be customized by contacting the Comodo Account Manager.

Note: You can login to the interface using either the credentials created via CAM account or the administrative credentials created via the CASG interface. If you login using the CAM account credentials, an additional feature 'Login to my Comodo account' will be available in the Account management area through which you can manage your account such as subscribe for more licenses.

3.2 The Dashboard Area

The Dashboard displays a snapshot summary of domain, user and archive quota usage as pie charts and domain and user license expiration as graphs. Administrators can download the pie charts and graphs as image or pdf files by clicking the download icon at the top right side of each item.



COMODO Creating Trust Online





3.2.1 Domain Management

The 'Domains' area of the interface allows administrators to perform domain management tasks such as adding, deleting editing and managing a domain. Various settings such as email size restrictions and extensions of attached files in emails can be configured for any listed domain. The interface also allows administrators to view logs of changes such as whitelist a recipient, blacklist a recipient and so on for all the domains in the account.

Tip: CASG also periodically generates Domains reports containing a summary of all the mail activities for the domain. The reports are sent to the administrators through email. Administrators can configure for such reports through Dashboard > Account Management > Admin > Add Administrators or Edit Administrators. Refer to CASG Reports - An Overview for more details.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

СОМОДО Antispam Gateway	Quarantine: 4 Release requests: 0 Whitelist requests: 0	Blacklist requests: 0	L My Account
Go!	Dashboard / Domains		
🕜 Dashboard	Domains		? Help
Domains	Add 🗑 Delete 🥒 Edit domain 👫 Manage domain		- Refresh
😥 Audit log			
Account management	Filters		
Real Customer management	Domains Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users
	docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	4	Unlimited
	🔲 dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua	0	Unlimited
			Per page 15 V
	Having Trouble? Support is here to help. Open a Ticket at <u>support.com</u>	10do.com or call 1.888.COMODO (25	56.2608)

The following section provides more information on Domains.

3.2.1.1 Domains

As the name suggests, the The 'Domains' area of the interface allows administrators to perform domain management tasks such as adding, deleting, editing a domain. Various settings such as email size restrictions and extensions of attached files in emails can be configured for any listed domain.

COMODO Antispam Gateway	Quarantine: 4 Release requests: 0	Whitelist requests: 0 Blacklis	it requests: 0	L My Account
Go!	Dashboard / Domains			
🕜 Dashboard	Domains			Help
Domains	🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 🥒 Edit dom	nain 🕌 Manage domain		Refresh
😥 Audit log				
Account management	Filters			
Sustomer management	Domains 🔺	Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users
	docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		4	Unlimited
	🔲 dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua		0	Unlimited
		-2/2]		Per page 15 🗸
	Having Trouble? Support is here to help.	Open a Ticket at <u>support.comodo.com</u>	1 or call 1.888.COMODO (256	.2608)

• Click the Domains tab in the left hand side navigation to open the Domains area.

The list of domains that are configured will be displayed.

Sorting the Entries

Clicking the domain column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries.

Using Filter options to search particular domain(s)

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains				
Domains 🕜 Hell				
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 🖉 Edit domain 👬 Manage domain		Refresh		
S Filters				
+ Domain v contains v		Apply filter		
Domains Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users		
docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	4	Unlimited		
dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua	0	Unlimited		
		Per page 15 🗸		

You can add more filters by clicking 🕈 for narrowing down your search.

Dash	ooard / Domains						
Do	mains						🕑 Help
+	Add 🛱 Delete 🤞	/ Edi	it domain 🕌	Manage o	Iomain		Refresh
0	Filters						
+	Domain	~	contains		•		Apply filter
-	Domain	~	equals		•		
-	Alias	~	contains		•		
-	Domain	~	starts with		•		
	Domains			Aliases		Number of users	Max. number of users
🔳 e	xample.domain.com					2	Unlimited
🕅 e	xample1.domain.com						

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- **Domain:** Will execute a search of domain names according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Aliases: Will execute a search of domain alias names according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following filters are available in the second drop-down:

- **Equals:** Displays the domain or alias name that was entered in full in the text box.
- **Contains:** Displays all domain or alias name(s) that contains the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all domain or alias name(s) that does not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all domain or alias name(s) that starts with the words entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all domain or alias name(s), except the one entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the domain or alias name(s) that ends with the words entered in the text box.



Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the

Befresh button to display all the domains.

Note: To display all the domains after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

Click the following links to know how to:

- Add a domain
- Delete a domain
- Edit a domain
- Manage a domain

3.2.1.1.1 Adding Domains

From this interface, administrators with appropriate privileges can add domains, configure the number of users for each domain and the destination routes for respective domains. The number of domains that you can add depends on the plan that you have subscribed.

To add a domain

• Click the 'Add' button in the Domains interface

Dashboard / Domains					
Domains 2 Help					
🕞 Add 🗇 Delete 🖉 Edit domain 👫 Manage domain					
Filters					
Domains	Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users		
docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		4	Unlimited		
dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua		0	Unlimited		
	[1-2/2]		Per page 15 🗸		

The 'Add domain' dialog will open.

Add domain		×
Domain		
Destination routes 🕂	25	Ŷ
Max. number of users Unlimited		
Check routes Save Cancel		

- Enter a valid domain name in the 'Domain' field.
- Enter the final mail server destination route in the 'Destination routes' field. This is where the mails will be delivered from CASG after appropriate filtering of mails. The default port is 25.
- If you want additional routes to be included for the filtered mails to be delivered in case of failure of the first route, click

lacksquare beside the 'Destination routes' field to add more alternative destination routes.

Add domain			X
Domain	testdomain.com]	
Destinction routes	🕂 mail.testdomain.com	25	\$
Destination routes	mail1.testdomain.com	25	\$
Max. number of users	Unlimited		
	Check routes Save Cancel		

- Click the 'Check routes' button to let CASG automatically get the destination routes information from DNS. If the result contains mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com then it means that DNS MX record was already updated to work with Antispam Gateway server and you must fill 'Destination routes' field with your real MX record, for example mail.exampledomain.com.
- Enter the maximum numbers of users that can be added for this domain in the 'Max.number of users' field. Leaving this setting as 'Unlimited' will allow you to add up to, but not exceed, the maximum number of users permitted by your current license. The maximum number of users for a selected domain can also be configured in the 'Domain Settings' area.
- The domain entered in the 'Destination routes' field is checked by Comodo Gateway diagnostic tool to assure the destination route is entered by administrator correctly.



Routes check errors.	
Relay : fhhfgjgkhlkjlj.com:25	٦
Error code : 500	
Error message : SMTP host unreachable	
	_
Are you sure you want to proceed with domain save ?	
Proceed Cancel	

Click 'Proceed' to save a domain.

Note: The number of users that you can add for all the domains belonging to your account depends on your subscription plan. For example, if the subscription plan for your account allows you to add 1000 users and you have three domains, then you can add 300 users for domain 1, 300 users for domain 2 and 400 users for domain 3. You can set any value between 0 and 999999 in the 'Max. number of users' field, but CASG checks if the total number of users for all domains is within your license limit.

• Click 'Save' to add the configured domains.

Note: When you create a new domain, email addresses 'abuse@addeddomain' and 'postmaster@addeddomain' will be added by default in Recipient Whitelist. **Click here** for more details.

3.2.1.1.2 Deleting Domains

If you want to delete a domain for which emails are being routed via CASG, this can be done in this interface.

To delete a domain

• Select the domain(s) that you want to delete from the interface.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains					
Domains (2) Help					
+ Add Delete & Edit domain					
Filters					
Domains	Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users		
docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		4	Unlimited		
🔲 dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua		0	Unlimited		
	[1-2/2]		Per page 15 🗸		

Click the "Delete' button

Tip:	You can select multiple domains to delete by pressing and holding the Shift or Ctrl keys.	

A notice will be displayed warning you that the users belonging to the selected domains to be deleted will also be removed.



• Click 'OK' to confirm.

The selected domain(s) will be deleted.

3.2.1.1.3 Editing Domains

You can change the destination routes of a configured domain and check routes for the edited domain. Please note that the name of the domain cannot be edited.

To edit a domain

• Select the domain that you want to edit from the interface.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains				
Domains (2 Help				
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 🖉 Edi		Refresh		
Filters				
Domains	Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users	
docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		4	Unlimited	
🔲 dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua		0	Unlimited	
	[1-2/2]		Per page 15 🗸	

• Click the 'Edit domain" button

The Edit domain dialog will be displayed. Please note that the domain name is not editable.

Edit domain		×
Domain	example1.domain.com	
Destination routes	+ mail.example1.domain.com 25	\$
Max. number of users	Unlimited	
	Check routes Save Cancel	

From here you can add another destination route, change the primary destination route or delete additional destination routes and reconfigure the maximum number of users for that domain.

- Click in the 'Destination route' field to edit it.
- Click 🕈 beside the 'Destination routes' field to add more alternative destination routes.

Edit domain			X
Domain	example1.domain.com		
Dectinction routes	+ mail.example1.domain.com	25	~
Destination routes	mail2.example1.domain.com	25	
Max. number of users	10		
	Check routes Save Cancel		

Click — to remove alternative destination routes.

- Click the 'Check routes' button to let CASG automatically get the destination routes information from DNS. If the result
 contains mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com then it means that DNS MX record was already updated to work with
 Antispam Gateway server and you must fill 'Destination routes' field with your real MX record, for example
 mail.testdomain.com.
- If required, edit the maximum of number of users that can be added for this domain in the 'Max. number of users' field. Leaving this setting as 'Unlimited' will allow you to add up to, but not exceed, the maximum number of users permitted by your current license.
- The domain entered in the 'Destination routes' field is checked by Comodo Gateway diagnostic tool to assure the destination route is entered by administrator correctly.

Note: The number of users that you can add for all the domains belonging to your account depends on your subscription plan. For example, if the subscription plan for your account allows you to add 1000 users and you have three domains, then you can add 300 users for domain 1, 300 users for domain 2 and 400 users for domain 3. You can set any value between 0 and 999999 in the 'Max. number of users' field, but CASG checks if the total number of users for all domains is within your license limit.

• Click 'Save' to confirm the changes.

3.2.1.1.4 Managing Domain

In this area, an administrator can configure various settings for a selected domain. This interface allows the administrator to view quarantined mails, set email restrictions, add users as recipient whitelist or blacklist, add new users and view log reports for the domain.

This section is divided into seven main subsections namely, Domain dashboard, Incoming, Outgoing, Email management, Audit log, Whitelist / Blacklist and Account management. Click on the respective tab to expand or close the subsection in the left hand side navigation.

To manage a domain

• Select the domain that you want to manage from the interface and click the 'Manage Domain' button.

or

• Click on the domain name in the 'Domains' column.

or

• Right-click on the domain name in the 'Domains' column to open in a new tab or window.

Dashboard / Domains						
Domains 2 Help						
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🥢 Edi	🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🖉 Edit domain 🔡 Manage domain					
Filters						
Domains	Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users			
docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		4	Unlimited			
🔲 dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua		0	Unlimited			
	[1-2/2]		Per page 15 🗸			

In the left hand side navigation, the configuration tabs for the selected domain will open. By default, the Domain dashboard for the selected domain will be displayed. Click on the tabs in the left side to open the respective interfaces.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



Click on the following links for more details on the subsections:

- Domain Dashboard
- Incoming
- Outgoing
- Email Management
- Domain Audit Log
- Whitelist / Blacklist
- Account Management

3.2.1.1.4.1 Domain Dashboard

CASG provides a dashboard view of a selected domain for quick analysis of important statistics such as number of quarantined mails, release requests, whitelist requests, blacklist requests, incoming mails archive quota usage and more. Administrators can download the pie charts and graphs as image or pdf files by clicking the download icon at the top right side of each item. To open a domain dashboard, click Domains tab on the left hand side and then:

• Select the domain that you want to view its dashboard and click the 'Manage Domain' button.

or

• Click on the domain name in the 'Domains' column.

or

• Right-click on the domain name in the 'Domains' column to open in a new tab or window.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Domains						
Domains (2) Help						
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🥢 Edi	t domain 🕌 🖁 Manage domain		Refresh			
Filters						
Domains	Aliases	Number of users	Max. number of users			
docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		4	Unlimited			
🔲 dsg-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua		0	Unlimited			
	[1-2/2]		Per page 15 🗸			

The dashboard of the selected domain will be displayed.



Clicking on the buttons at the top of the domain dashboard takes you to the respective interface:

- Quarantine Displays the quarantined mails of all users of the selected domain. Refer to the section Quarantine for more details.
- Release requests Displays the requests from users of the selected domain for releasing quarantined mails. Refer to the section Released Requests for more details.
- Whitelist requests Displays the requests from users of the selected domain for whitelisting the senders of quarantined mails. Refer to the section Whitelisted Requests for more details.

 Blacklist requests - Displays the requests from users of the selected domain for blacklisting the senders of guarantined mails. Refer to the section Blacklisted Requests for more details.

The Mails Statistics area provides a graphical as well as pie chart representation of the mails that were blocked, viruses blocked and more. Hovering the mouse cursor over a sector or graph displays a call-out providing respective details. Clicking on a legend turns on / off respective metric on the chart and graph.



The 'Archive quota usage' area provides details of the storage space used for archiving incoming mails. The graph shows the disk space used per day for the last two weeks. Hovering the mouse cursor over any part of the graph displays the details of the space used for the respective date. Refer to the section **Managing Archived Mails** for more details.



The 'Delivery queue statistics' area provides details of filtered mails that are queued in CASG servers for delivery at a later time. It also displays the average time of queued mails for the previous day in CASG servers before delivery. Refer to the section **Delivery Queue** for more details.



COMODO Creating Trust Online*

3.2.1.1.4.2 Incoming

The 'Incoming' area of the Manage Domain section allows you to view quarantined mails, configure incoming spam detection settings, set spam alert headings, add local email recipients and more.

Ģ	Antispam Gateway
	Go!
\bigcirc	Dashboard
۲	Domain dashboard
٢	Incoming 🗸 🗸
	Quarantine
	Archive
	Spam detection settings
	Report spam
	Delivery queue
	Destination routes
	Local recipients
	Clear incoming cache
	Log search
	Domain aliases
	Domain settings
	Manage report subscriptions
	Relay restrictions
	Geolocation restrictions
٩	Outgoing >

Click the following links for more details:

- Quarantine
- Managing Archived Mails
- Incoming Spam detection settings
- Report Spam
- Delivery Queue
- Destination Routes
- Local Recipients
- Clear Incoming Cache
- Log Search
- Domain Aliases
- Domain Settings
- Manage Report Subscriptions for Selected Domain
- Relay Restrictions
- Geolocation Restrictions

Quarantine

In this area, an administrator can view the list of all the quarantined emails and their headers, of all the users for the selected domain. The administrator can also choose to release quarantined emails to the intended recipient after ascertaining that particular email is not actually a spam. The administrator also can delete a selected or all the spam mails from this interface.

Tip: CASG also periodically generates Quarantine reports containing a summary of mails identified as spam or malicious that were moved to quarantine automatically. The reports are sent to the administrators through email. Administrators can configure for such reports through **Dashboard > Account Management > Admin > Add Administrators** or **Edit Administrators**. Refer to **CASG Reports - An Overview** for more details.

To open the quarantined email interface:

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Quarantine' tab.



The quarantined email area of the selected domain will open:

Dashboard / Domains	Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Quarantine								
Quarantine 2 Help								Help	
🗐 Show messag	e 🗂 Release 🗑 Delete More a	actions 🗸					1.	Refre	esh
Filters									
Subject	From	То	Recipient	Date (GMT+	Reason	Size	0	Acti	ions
🔲 Spam email 1	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo1@docteamcasg.com	demo1@docteamcasg.com	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.:	168 bytes			
📄 Spam email 2	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo2@docteamcasg.com	demo2@docteamcasg.com	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.:	168 bytes			
	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]					Per	page	15	~

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using Filter option to search quarantined emails

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcaso.comodo.od.ua / Quarantine	
Quarantine	? Help
Show message TRelease Delete More actions V	Refresh
S Filters	
➡ Subject v contains v	Apply filter
Subject From To Recipient Date (GMT+ Reason	Size 🕅 Actions
spam	

You can add more filters by clicking	Ŧ	for narrowing down your search.
i ou our uuu moro muoro by onorang		for mariorning domin your obdroin

Dashboard / Domains / Domain	dashboard - docteamcasq.cr	omodo.od.ua / Quarantine			
Quarantine					? Help
🗐 Show message 🗂	Release <u> </u> Delete	More actions 🗸			Refresh
Filters					
+ Subject	✓ contains	•			Apply filter
From	✓ contains	•			
То	✓ contains	•			
- Date	✓ equals	▼			
Size (KB)	✓ less than	✓ 0 ²			
Subject From		<u></u> То	Recipient	Date (GMT+ Reason	Size 🕅 Actions
				spam	

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- **Subject:** Will execute a search of subject according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- From: Will execute a search of senders according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- To: Will execute a search of users according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- Contains: Displays all quarantined mails that contain the words entered in the text box
- Not Contains: Displays all quarantined emails that don't contain the words entered in the text box

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

- Date: Will execute a search of mail received dates according to the date selected in the calendar box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Size (KB): Will execute a search of mails according to the size selected or entered in third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Date' is selected, the following conditions are available:

• Equals: Displays the quarantined emails that have the same date as the selected date in the third box from the calendar

- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Greater than: Displays the quarantined emails with dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

If 'Size' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with size less than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Greater than: Displays the quarantined emails with size greater than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.
- Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.
- Click the Refresh button to display all the quarantined emails.

Note: To display all the quarantined emails after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

Viewing Details of Quarantined Mails

The details like subject, sender, recipient, date and size of the mails added to the Quarantine can be viewed in two ways:

- In the same CASG window
- In a new CASG window

To view details of quarantined mails in the same CASG window:

• In the quarantined email area, select the mail that you want to view and click the 'Show Message' button.

or

Click on the email link in the subject column that you want to view its details.

Dashboard / Domains	Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.	ua / Quarantine							
Quarantine								0	lelp
Show messag	e) 🗂 Release 🛛 🗑 Delete 🛛 More a	actions 🗸					Ð	Refr	esh
Fitters									
🔄 Subject 🔺	From	То	Recipient *	Date (GMT +	Reason	Size	0	Act	ions
🗐 Spam email 1	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo1@docteamcasg.com	demo1@docteamcasg.com	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.:	168 bytes			
🔄 Spam email 2	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo2@docteamcasg.com	demo2@docteamcasg.com	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.:	168 bytes			
1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]					Per	page	15	~

The details of the selected email will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

E-mail	×
Normal	All headers
🗂 Release	e 💿 Whitelist this Sender 🙆 Blacklist this Sender 🛱 Delete
Subject	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.
From	Con Antheadh agus na man an a
То	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
cc	
Date (GMT	Wed Apr 09 04:33:22 GMT 2014
+0)	
Size	3.98 KB
Actions	

To view the email headers, which contain the tracking information of the mail detailing the path it has crossed before reaching the recipient, click 'All headers' tab. The headers give full details of the sender, route, recipient, sent date, mail type and so on and enable you to check the authenticity of the mail.

E-mail	×
Normal All headers	
Received : from nm34-vm9.bullet.mail.sg3.yahoo.com ([106.10.151.248])	^
by mxsrv1.dev.spamgateway.comodo.com with esmtps (TLSv1:DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA:256)	
(Exim 4.82)	
(envelope-from	
id 1WXkCP-0007Go-Ng	
for demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Wed, 09 Apr 2014 04:33:23 +0000	
Received : from [106.10.166.60] by nm34.bullet.mail.sg3.yahoo.com with NNFMP; 09 Apr 2014 04:33	3:22 -0000
Received : from [106.10.151.253] by tm17.bullet.mail.sg3.yahoo.com with NNFMP; 09 Apr 2014 04:3	3:22 -0000
Received : from [127.0.0.1] by omp1002.mail.sg3.yahoo.com with NNFMP; 09 Apr 2014 04:33:22 -00	000
X-Yahoo-Newman-Property : ymail-3	
X-Yahoo-Newman-Id : 694392.49436.bm@omp1002.mail.sg3.yahoo.com	
Received : (qmail 64865 invoked by uid 60001); 9 Apr 2014 04:33:22 -0000	
DKIM-Signature : v=1; a=rsa-sha256; c=relaxed/relaxed; d=yahoo.co.in; s=s1024; t=1397018002;	
bh=Q0cJ0CMPRZBJmlX/pceZ3DX3DfQq+17Zs1s9x1uykMQ=; h=X-YMail-0SG:Received:X-Rocket-M	IMEInfo:X-
Mailer:References:Message-ID:Date:From:Reply-To:Subject:To:In-Reply-To:MIME-Version:Content-To:	ype;
b=vzeLiPS1K3U518NZDyUWbQRS+M6TfJ6PZBMuxuan6yPFSSDUoNWyf307JfWWSDiPR3I0/hK3df	3CBJmOnZzSOgjX00caPYgc
PkFA6v0QfFnRJmDL3G1KgmXD+xGIDZeYdGEM1i5Xrg4e8bqlfSU4K24wHReZsfWPAIIBo3SQpU=	
DomainKey-Signature : a=rsa-sha1; q=dns; c=nofws;	
s=s1024; d=yahoo.co.in;	
h=X-YMail-OSG:Received:X-Rocket-MIMEInfo:X-Mailer:References:Message-ID:Date:From:Reply-To	:SubjectTo:In-Reply-
To:MIME-Version:Content-Type;	
b=Atu6QAS3En/rqO5Jf+tUocKEFF5z27G3mF0A4MTkuuMBLyaS9lw4lfcUj4	
/leU6RvMhY313XCVsHY2qZarDsYEg0PwPHScXwWWW0RdB2c1pETWPknedvA59Ylj7trE2bAlc+wv	E1xynjAQ
/eULzXrbhMPubQv5wO4AyeR/j4Sk=;	
X-YMail-OSG : oncNNLcVM1IvXB)Wba.97RYWB6_wbgd5gzeHBiiDhkOD2Eg	
C2R0RXab035IKH8zS6vSdIUil4N_Mv9mm49Mta8sjAhndNYNJfdW8VxCMzkv	
nPdvTzIGnxwqM3A/o8it/VLrBORz71wPe7YFQUGNg4rmkeHk7CsBLs9XLnvS	M

Check the details of the mail and ascertain whether it is a spam mail or not. You can choose to either release the mail or delete it. Click the 'Whitelist this sender' tab to add the sender to 'Sender Whitelist' if you desire or 'Blacklist this Sender' to add this

×

sender to Sender Blacklist. Refer to the section 'Whitelist / Blacklist' for more details.

To view the details of a quarantined mail in a new CASG window

 In the quarantined email area, select the mail that you want to view, right-click on the email link in the subject column and select to open in a new tab or new window.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Quarantine												
Quarantine												
Show	v messag	ge 🗂 Release <u> </u> Delete	More a	actions 🗸					Ð	Refresh		
S Filter	rs											
Subje	ect ^	From		То	Recipient	Date (GMT +	Reason	Size	0	Action	s	
🔽 Spam	email 1 Op	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua en Link in New <u>T</u>ab</demo@csg.comodo.od.ua 	>	demo1@docteamcasg.com	demo1@docteamcasg.com	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.:	168 bytes				
🕅 Spam	Op Op Bo Say	en Link in New <u>W</u> indow en Link in New <u>P</u> rivate Window okmark This <u>L</u> ink re Link As	>	demo2@docteamcasg.com	demo2@docteamcasg.com	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.:	168 bytes				
	Co Sea	py Link Loc <u>a</u> tion arch Google for "Spam email 1"	Perp							15 🗸]	
	Ins	pect Element (<u>Q</u>)										

The browser may display a warning pop-up window notification. Click the 'Options'> then select 'Allow pop-ups for...' to allow to open new message in a new window. Click again 'Show message in new window'.

🐻 Firefox prevented this site from opening a pop-up window.	Options	I

The details of the selected mail will be displayed in a new CASG window.

Dashboard / [)omains / Domain dashboard - docteamcaso	<u>q.comodo.od.ua</u> / <u>Quara</u>	antine / E-mail
E-mail			Help
Normal	All headers		
T Release	e 🔕 Whitelist this Sender 🙆 Bl	lacklist this Sender	Delete
Subject	Spam email 1		
From	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>		
То	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	a	
CC			
Date (GMT +0)	Tue Oct 28 13:21:46 GMT 2014		
Size	168 bytes		
Actions			

To release a quarantined mail:

After viewing the details and ensuring that the selected email is not a spam you can choose to release the mail to the recipient.

• Select the mail that you want to release and click the 'Release' button.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Quarantine											
Quarantine								? Help			
Show message	C Release Delete	ore actions 🗸					ſ	Refresh			
S Filters											
Subject	From	То	Recipient	Date (GMT +0	Reason	Size	0	Actions			
🔽 Spam email 1	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo1@docteamcasg.comod	demo1@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes					
📄 Spam email 2	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo2@docteamcasg.comod	demo2@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes					
I I I /1	▶ ▶I [1-2/2]					Per	page	15 🗸			

An alert will be displayed to confirm the release of selected email.

Release emails		×
Are you s email?	ure you war	nt to release the selected
	ок	Cancel

• Click 'OK' to confirm the release

The email will be released to the addressee and the mail will no longer be in the quarantined list.

To add a sender to whitelist

After ascertaining that emails sent by particular senders are not spam, administrators can choose to add them to 'Sender Whitelist' from this interface. Once added to whitelist, emails sent by these senders will not be quarantined.

• Select the mail that you want to add the sender to whitelist and then click 'More actions' > 'Whitelist this Sender'.

Dashboard / Domains / D	Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Quarantine											
Quarantine									? +	Help		
Show message	🗂 Release 🗍 Delete	More actions 🗸						Ţ	Refre	esh		
Filters		Whitelist this Sender										
Subject	From	Delete all		Recipient ^	Date (GMT ÷0	Reason	Size	0	Acti	ions		
📝 Spam email 1	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo1@docteamcasg.co	omod	l demo1@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes					
🗐 Spam email 2	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo2@docteamcasg.co	demo2@docteamcasg.comod		Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes					
I€ € 1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]						Per	page	15	~		

An alert will be displayed to confirm adding the sender to whitelist.





• Click 'OK' to confirm to add the sender to whitelist. Refer the section 'Sender Whitelist' for more details.

To add a sender to blacklist

Administrators can choose to add senders to 'Sender Blacklist' from the Quarantine interface also. Once the selected senders are added to blacklist, all emails from them to the selected domain will be automatically blocked.

• Select the mail that you want to add the sender to blacklist and then click 'More actions' > 'Blacklist this Sender'.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcaso, comodo.od.ua / Quarantine											
Quarantine								0 н	elp		
Show message Release Delete More actions											
S Filters		Whitelist this Sender									
Subject	From	Blacklist this Sender	Recipient ^	Date (GMT ÷0	Reason	Size	0	Actio	ons		
Spam email 1	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo1@docteamcasg.comc	d demo1@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes					
🗐 Spam email 2	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo2@docteamcasg.comc	d demo2@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes					
I€ € 1 /1	Image: Same security.Junk.20 Image: Same security.30 Image: Same security.3										

An alert will be displayed to confirm adding the sender to blacklist.

Blacklist emails	×
Are you sure you wan selected email?	t to blacklist sender of the
ок	Cancel

• Click 'OK' to confirm to add the sender to blacklist. Refer the section 'Sender Blacklist' for more details.

To delete a quarantined mail:

• Select the mail that you want to delete and click the 'Delete' button

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / D	omain dashboard - docteamcasq.comod	lo.od.ua / Quarantine						
Quarantine								? Help
Show message	🗂 Release 🗍 Delete 🕅	lore actions 🗸					1°	Refresh
S Filters								
Subject	From	To	Recipient ^	Date (GMT +0	Reason	Size	0	Actions
Spam email 1	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo1@docteamcasg.comod	demo1@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes		
🗐 Spam email 2	admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua></demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	demo2@docteamcasg.comod	demo2@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes		
I 4 4 1 <i>1 1</i>	▶ ▶I [1-2/2]					Per	page	15 🗸

An alert will be displayed to confirm the deletion. Click 'OK' to delete the selection email.

Delete emails X
Are you sure you want to delete the selected emails?
OK Cancel

The selected mail will be deleted and will no longer be in the quarantined mail list.

•

To delete all the quarantined mails, click 'More actions' > 'Delete all'.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Quarantine										
Quarantine										Help
Show message	🗂 Release	Delete	More actions 🗸						Ð	Refresh
Filters			Whitelist this Sender							
Subject	From		Blacklist this Sender	-	Recipient	Date (GMT ÷0	Reason	Size	0	Actions
🔽 Spam email 1	admin <demo@csg.co< td=""><td>modo.od.ua></td><td>demo1@docteamcasg.co</td><td>omod</td><td>demo1@docteamcasg.</td><td>Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM</td><td>spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20</td><td>168 bytes</td><td></td><td></td></demo@csg.co<>	modo.od.ua>	demo1@docteamcasg.co	omod	demo1@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:46 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes		
📃 Spam email 2	admin <demo@csg.co< td=""><td>modo.od.ua></td><td>demo2@docteamcasg.co</td><td>omod</td><td>demo2@docteamcasg.</td><td>Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM</td><td>spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20</td><td>168 bytes</td><td></td><td></td></demo@csg.co<>	modo.od.ua>	demo2@docteamcasg.co	omod	demo2@docteamcasg.	Oct 28, 2014 1:21:19 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.20	168 bytes		
	▶ ▶ [1	-2/2]						Per	r page	15 🗸

An alert will be displayed to confirm the deletion. Click 'OK' to delete all quarantined emails.





All the guarantined emails for the selected domain will be deleted .

Managing Archived Mails

CASG is capable of storing a copy of all incoming mails for all domains belonging to an account. A customer can purchase the archive storage space via Comodo Accounts Manager (CAM).

From the archived mails interface, an administrator with appropriate privileges can view details of the message, report spam, resend emails if required, retain messages from being removed, add the sender to whitelist/blacklist and delete messages. The archived messages can be deleted manually or can be automated to be cleaned periodically. The settings for auto cleanup can be configured in the **Domains Settings** interface.

To open the archived email interface:

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Archive' tab.



The archived email area of the selected domain will open:

Dashboard / Domains / D	omain dashboard - csoo	s4 comodo od us / Archive									
Archive											O Hel
Show message	A Report spam	Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Se	nder 🛱 Resend email	Delete	More actions 🗸		Show archive		· E	3 Refresh
S Filters											
Subject		From	-	То		Recipient	•	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	8	Actio
New account regis	tered	admin@csgqa.comodo.	od.ua	user6@csgqa4.comodo.od	ua	user6@csgqa4.comodo.od.	ua	Mon Jun 15 13:01:27 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	8	
🖹 New account regis	fered	admin@csgqa.comodo.	odua	user30@osgqa4.comodo.o	due	user30@osgqa4.comodo.oo	i.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:52:53 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	0	
New user user42@csgqs4.com	ido.od.ua.successfuli						i.ua	Mon Jun 15 12 50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 KB	0	

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Page Filter

The page filter on the right side has three options:

Show archive	~	12	Refres
Show archive Show reported a	is spam		
Snow archive an	id reporte	d as s	pam –
Date (GMT +0)*	size ^	d as s	pam Act

- Show archive: Lists only the archived mails
- Show reported as spam: Lists mails that are reported as spam
- Show archive and reported as spam: Lists both archived mails and mails that are reported as spam

Select the option from the drop-down before using the filter option described below.

Using Filter option to search archived emails

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Destilioard / Domains / D	Iomain dashboard - cao	ga4.comodo.od.ue / Archive									
Archive											Help
D Show message	\land Report spam	Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Send	er 🗘 Resend email	Delete	More actions 🗸		Show archive an	d repor		Refresh
Filters											
+ Subject	v contains	v (Apply fi	ter
E Subject		From	^ To			* Recipient	-	Date (GMT+0)*	Size *	0	Actions
New account regis	tered	adminificagga.comodo d	od.ua us	er6@csgqa4.comodo.od.	ua.	user6@osgqa4.comodo.od.ua		Mon Jun 15 13.01.27 GMT 2015	20.51 КВ	8	

You can add more filters by clicking 👕 for narrowing down your search.

Dashboard / Domains / Dom	in dash	coord - caopa4	comodo od un / /	Archive						
Archive										🕜 Help
Show message	A Rep	ort spam	Whitelist this	Sender	Blacklist this Sender	🛱 Resend email	Delete	More actions	Show archive and repor	- Refresh
Filters										
+ Subject	¥	contains	*						and the second	Apply filter
From	*	not contains	•							
To	*	contains	*							
Date	~	equals	¥							
Size (KB)	*	less than	*	0	\$					
- Attachments	~	equals	~							
Marked as retained	¥	equals	Ŷ							

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- **Subject:** Will execute a search of subject according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- From: Will execute a search of senders according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- To: Will execute a search of users according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- **Contains:** Displays all archived mails that contain the words entered in the text box
- Not Contains: Displays all archived emails that don't contain the words entered in the text box

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

- Date: Will execute a search of mail received dates according to the date selected in the calendar box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Size (KB): Will execute a search of mails according to the size selected or entered in third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Attachments: Will execute a search of mails according to the checkbox status (column 3) whether enabled or disabled. If enabled, all archived mails with attachments will be displayed.
- Marked as retained: Will execute a search of mails according to the checkbox status (column 3) whether enabled or disabled. If enabled, all archived mails that are marked as retained will be displayed.

If 'Date' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays the archived emails that have the same date as the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Less than: Displays the archived emails with dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Greater than: Displays the archived emails with dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

If 'Size' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Less than: Displays the archived emails with size less than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Greater than: Displays the archived emails with size greater than the selected or entered size in the third box

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.



Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the

button to display all the archived emails.

Note: To display all the archived emails after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

Viewing Details of Archived Mails

The details like subject, sender, recipient, date and size of the mails in the archive can be viewed in two ways:

- In the same CASG window
- In a new CASG window

To view details of archived mails in the same CASG window:

• In the archived email area, select the mail that you want to view and click the 'Show Message' button.

or

• Click on the email link in the subject column that you want to view its details.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - ceope	4 comodo od ea / Archive					
Archive						🕑 Help
Show message A Report spam	Whitelist this Sender Blacklist this	Sender 🦪 Resend email 🗑 Delete 🚺	More actions 🗸	Show archive an	d repor 🛩	Refresh
S Fitera						
🗇 Subject *	From	То ^	Recipient -	Date (GMT +0)~	Size *	Actions
New account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	userő@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	userő@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 13:01:27 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	0
New account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user30@cagqa4.comodo.od.ua	user30@cagqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:52:53 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	8
View user user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua successfully imported	admin@cagga.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 KB	Ø
New account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT	20.51 K9	8

The details of the selected email will be displayed.

E-mail						×		
Normal	Normal All headers							
A Report	spam	🔘 Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Sender	🕫 Resend email	Retain message	Delete		
Subject	New u	ser user42@csgqa4.comod	o.od.ua successfully importe	ed.				
From	admin	@csgqa.comodo.od.ua						
То	user77	7@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua						
cc								
Date (GMT +0)	2015-0	06-15 12:50:00						
Size	19.61	KB						
Actions								

To view the email headers, which contain the tracking information of the mail detailing the path it has crossed before reaching the recipient, click 'All headers' tab. The headers give full details of the sender, route, recipient, sent date, mail type and so on.

Options x

To view the details of archived mails in a new CASG window

• In the archived email area, select the mail that you want to view, right-click on the email link in the subject column and select to open in a new tab or new window.

Deshboard / Domains / Domain	n dashboard - cs	aga4.comodo.ed.ua / Archive					
Archive							
🗐 Show message 🖉	Report sparr	Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Ser	ider 🛱 Resend email	🗑 Delete	More actions	Show arctive
Filters							
Subject		* From	+ 1	ĩo		* Recipient	- Date (GMT
Audit.notification: Black	list sender for	Open Link in New <u>T</u> ab		iser77@csgqa4.comodo.o	dua	user77@csgqs4.comodo.od.us	Wed Apr 22 12:40:19 GMT 2015
Audit notification: Black	list send	Open Link in New Window Open Link in New Private Win	dow	iser77@csgqa4.comodo.o	d.ua	user77@csgqs4.comodo.od.us	Wed Apr 22 13:00 41 GU
Audit notification: Black	list send	Bookmark This Link S <u>h</u> are This Link Save Lin <u>k</u> As Copy Link Location		iser77@csgqa4.comodo.o	dua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	2015 Wed Apt 77 10:40.36 Oc 2015
Audit notification: Black	list send	Search Google for "Audit notif Inspect Element (Q)	iicat"	iser77@csgqa4.comodo.o	d.ua	user77@csgqs4.comodo.od.us	Wasd Apr (*) 13:40:36 Civ 2015
Audit notification Black	list sender for						

The browser may display a warning pop-up window notification. Click the 'Options'> then select 'Allow pop-ups for...' to allow to open new message in a new window. Click again 'Show message in new window'.

🐻 Firefox prevented this site from opening a pop-up window.

The details of the selected mail will be displayed in a new CASG window.

Destitional / I	unificard / Domains / Domain davihourd - clique / Archive / Archive mail					
Archive	rchive mail					
Normal	All headers					
A Report	uft spam 🔞 Whitelist this Sender 🕼 Blacklist this Sender 🛱 Resend email 🔂 Relain message 📋 Delete					
Subject	at Audit notification: Blacklist sender for user					
From	m admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua					
То	o user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua					
CC	C					
Date (GMT +0)	T 2015-04-22 13:40:16					
Size	re 20.24 KB					
Actions	8					

To report archived mails as spam

After viewing the details and ensuring that the selected email is a spam you can choose to report it as a spam.

• Select the mail that you want to report as spam and click 'Report spam'.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - cause	4 conodo od wa / Archive						
Archive						6	Help
Show message Report spam	🗑 Whitelist this Sender 🌘 Blacklist this S	ender 🛱 Resend email 🛱 Delete 🧧	More actions 💙	Show archive and	i repor 🗸) C (Refresh
S Filters							
Subject	From	To	Recipient *	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	8	Actions
New account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user6@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user6@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 13:01:27 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	Ø	A
Vew account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user30@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user30@cogqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:52:53 GMT 2015	20.51 КВ	0	
New user user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua successfully	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT	19.61 KB	0	

An alert will be displayed to confirm selected email as spam.

Report as spam	×
Are you sure you w emails as spam?	ant to mark the selected
ок	Cancel

Click 'OK' to confirm.

•

Spam reported successfull	1	

A success message will be displayed and the icon 🐣 indicating the email is reported as spam will be shown under the 'Actions' column.

To add a sender to whitelist

Administrators can choose to add the email senders to 'Sender Whitelist' from this interface. Once added to whitelist, emails sent by these senders will not be quarantined.

· Select the mail that you want to add the sender to whitelist and then click 'Whitelist this Sender'

Deshboard / Domins / Domain dashboard - caque	4 correde ad us / Archive						
Archive							Help
D Show message 🔬 Report spam	Whitelist this Sender 🕞 Blacklist this S	ender 🦪 Resend email 📆 Delete 🧧	More actions 💙	Show archive	~	0	Refresh
Filtera							
E Subject *	From *	To *	Recipient *	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	8	Actions
New user user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua successfully imported	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 KB	Ø	
View account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user42.@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@cogqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	0	
🐑 test ham 15-06-15 15:40	alexander kravchenko «alexander kravchenko@comodo.com»	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT 2015	2.82 KB	8	

An alert will be displayed to confirm adding the sender to whitelist.



Whitelist emails			×			
Are you sure you want to whitelist sender of the selected email?						
	ОК	Cancel				

• Click 'OK' to confirm to add the sender to whitelist. Refer the section 'Sender Whitelist' for more details.

To add a sender to blacklist

Administrators can choose to add the email senders to 'Sender Blacklist' from this interface. Once the selected senders are added to blacklist, all emails from them to the selected domain will be automatically blocked.

· Select the mail that you want to add the sender to blacklist and then click 'Blacklist this Sender'

Dashboard / Demains / Domain dashboard - caupa	4 comodo od ua / Archive						
Archive						•	Help
🕒 Show message 🛛 🛆 Report spam	Whitelist this Sende Blacklist this S	ender 🛱 Resend email 🔠 Delete 🚺	More actions 💙	Show archive	~	Ð	Refresh
S Filters							
🖻 Subject *	From *	To	Recipient *	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	0	Actions
New user user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua successfully imported	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@cegqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 KB	8	
Vew account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 КВ	0	
E test ham 15-06-15 15:40	alexander kravchenko <alexander.kravchenko@comodo.com></alexander.kravchenko@comodo.com>	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT 2015	2.82 KB	0	

An alert will be displayed to confirm adding the sender to blacklist.



Click 'OK' to confirm to add the sender to blacklist. Refer the section 'Sender Blacklist' for more details.

To resend emails from archive

The archived mails can be sent to the recipients if required. CASG will still retain a copy of mails in the archive even after they are sent.

• Select the mail that you want to resend and click 'Resend email'.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Domains / D	onen destiserd - csepa	4 comodo od us / Archive								
Archive									(🕑 Help
Show message	A Report spam	Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Se	ender 🤃 Resend email) 🛱 Delete	More actions 🛩	[Show archive	-	Ð	Refresh
Filters										
Subject	-	From		То	* Recipient	-	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	0	Actions
New user user42@csgqa4.como imported	do.od.ua successfully	admin@csgqa.comodo.c	d.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua		Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GNT 2015	19.61 KB	0	
Vew account regist	tered	admin@csgqa.comodo.c	id.ue	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua		Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	0	
E test ham 15-06-15	15:40	alexander kravchenko «alexander kravchenko@	comodo.com>	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua		Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT 2015	2.82 KB	0	

An alert will be displayed to confirm resending emails.



• Click 'OK' to confirm.

A success message will be displayed.

Successfully sent	Na sa

To delete archived mails

• Select the mail that you want to delete and click the 'Delete' button

Deshboard / Domens / Do	main dashboard - csoo	et comodo od us / Archive								
Archive									(🛛 Help
D Show message	\land Report spam	🕞 Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Se	ender	🛱 Resend email 🗍 Delete	More actions 💙	Show archive		0	Refresh
Filters										
Subject		From		То	*	Recipient *	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	0	Actions
INew user user42@csgqa4.como imported	do.od.ua successfull	admin@csgqa.comodo.c	od.ua	user77(@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 KB	Ø	
Vew account regist	ered	admin@csgqa.comodo.c	od.ua	user42(@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@osgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 КВ	0	
[7] test ham 15-05-15	15:40	alexander kravchenko <alexander kravchenko@<="" td=""><td>comodo com></td><td>user42(</td><td>Scagqa4.comodo.od.ua</td><td>user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua</td><td>Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT 2015</td><td>2.82 KE</td><td>0</td><td></td></alexander>	comodo com>	user42(Scagqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT 2015	2.82 KE	0	

An alert will be displayed to confirm deletion.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



• Click 'OK' to confirm.

The selected mail will be deleted and will no longer be in archive.

• To delete all the archived mails, click 'More actions' > 'Delete all'.

Sectores / sectores / s		and the second of the second									
Archive											-
Show message	🛆 Report spam	Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Ser	ider 🤤 Resend email	Delete	More actions 💙		Show archive	~	-14	Br
Filters						Delete al					
🔄 Subject		From		Го		In-Betain message		Date (GMT +0)^	Size *	8	
New user user42@csgqa4.com	ido od ua successfu	lly admin⊗cegqa.comodo.	od ua 👘	iser77@csgqs4.comodo.c	id ue	user77@csgqa4.comodo) od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT	19.61 KE	8	

An alert will be displayed to confirm the deletion. Click 'OK' to delete all archived emails.

To exclude mails from auto-clean operations

CASG can be configured in the **Domain Settings** area to automatically purge emails from archive after the configured period. If administrators wants to retain email(s) from being cleared, then these mails can be marked as 'Retain message'.

• Select the mail(s) that you want to retain and then click 'More actions' > 'Retain Message'.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - osoor	4 comodo od ua / Archive							
Archive								O He
D Show message 🛆 Report spam	Whitelist this Sender Blacklist this S	iender 🥵 Resend email 🛱 D	elete More actions 🗸		Show archive		•	Refres
Filters			Delete all					
Subject *	From	То	Un.Retain message	1	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	0	Act
View user user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua successfully imported	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.camodo.oc	lua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 KB	0	
V New account registered	admin@cagqa.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@cegqa4.comodo.oc	lua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	Ø	
Fi test ham 15-06-15 15 40	alexander krävchenko salexandet krävchenkolitoomode some	user42@csgqa4 comodo od ua	user42@cagqa4.comodo.od	ue.	Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT 2015	2.82 KE	0	

An alert will be displayed to confirm retain selected email(s).



Click 'OK' to confirm.

٠

Dashboard / Domains / D	omain dashbdard - cao	os4 comodo od ve / Archive								
Archive										Help
Successfully retained										8
Show message	A Report spam	Whitelist this Sender	Blacklist this Sender	🛱 Resend email	Delete	More actions 💙	Show archive	*	0	Refresh
Filters										
Subject		* From	- To			* Recipient	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	0	Actions
Vew user user42@csgqa4.como imported	odo.od.ua successfu	lly admin@csgqa.comodo.o	d.ua user	77@csgqa4.comodo.od	Lua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 KB	0	ψ
Vew account regist	tered	admin@csgqa.comodo.o	useri	42@csgqa4.comodo.oc	l.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 КВ	0	ψ
					Laa	user42/@csqqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT	2.82 KE	8	

A confirmation dialog will be displayed and the retained messages are indicated by the anchor icons under the Actions column.

 To remove the retained status for a mail, select the retained message and then click 'More actions' > 'Un-Retain Message'.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - caoo	a4.comedo.ed.ua / Archive						
Archive						0	Help
🕒 Show message 🔺 Report spam	Whitelist this Sender Blacklist this S	ender 🗘 Resend email 🗑 Delete	More actions	Show archive	•	Re Re	efresh
S Filters			Delete all				
🖺 Subject *	From *	То	Retain message	Date (GMT +0)*	Size *	8	Actions
Vew user user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua successfult imported	y admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.61 КВ	8	4
V New account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	8	Ψ
🗑 test ham 15-06-15 15:40	alexander kravchenko Kalexander kravchenko/%comodo.como-	user42@cagqa4.comodo.od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:41:00 GMT	2.82 KB	0	

An alert will be displayed to confirm selected email(s) from retain status.



Click 'OK' to confirm.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - csop	a4.comode.od.ug / Archive							
Archive							1	Help
Successfully unretained								
🗐 Show message Report spam	Whitelist this Sender Blacklist th	his Sender 🛱 Resend ema	I 🛱 Delete	More actiona 🐱	Show archive	Ŷ	9	Refresh
Filters								
🔄 Subject	From	- To		* Recipient *	Date (GMT +0)-	Size *	0	Actions
V New user user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua successful imported	ly admin@cagqa.comodo.od.ua	user77@csgqa4.comodo	od.us	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	19.51 KB	0	
Vew account registered	admin@csgqa.comodo.od.us	user42@csgqa4.comodo	od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:50:00 GMT 2015	20.51 KB	0	
1 test ham 15-06-15 15:40	alexander kravchenko «alexander kravchenko@comodo.com»	user42@csgqa4.comodo	od.ua	user42@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	Mon Jun 15 12:41.00 GNT	2.82 KB	8	

A confirmation dialog will be displayed and the anchor icons under the Actions column are no longer displayed indicating their unretained status.

Incoming Spam detection settings

The settings made in this interface determine what kind of mails should be classified as 'spam', 'probable' and 'safe'. CASG enforces several rules to mail envelope, header and content as the emails passes through its spam filters. Each of these rules depicts some typical spam attribute, which has a numeric value on the probability that the attribute suggests spam. A message's spam score depends on the result of weighted value of all the rules combined together. For example, if you set the spam threshold as 0.33, all mails that have a score of more than 0.33 will be treated as spam and quarantined. Please note that the highest spam threshold is 1 for CASG and the higher threshold you set, it is likely that more spam messages may be delivered to the recipients. Try the settings for a week or so and after analyzing how much spam messages are being delivered to the recipients without being filtered for the current settings, you have to reconfigure the spam threshold settings accordingly.

To configure incoming spam detection settings

• Click the 'Incoming' tab from the left hand side navigation to expand it and then click the 'Spam detection settings' tab.



The incoming spam detection settings interface for the selected domain will open:

ncoming Spam detection se	ettings 📀 Hei
Quarantine enabled:	Days saved: 30
Spam threshold:	0.9 Spam notation:
Probable spam threshold:	0.1 Probable spam notation:
Quarantine response:	Rejected 🗸
Notify user about new quarantine message:	
Save	Reset to default

- Quarantine enabled Selecting this option will move the incoming emails detected as spam as per the
 'Spam threshold setting' to Quarantine. If this option is not enabled, emails that are detected as 'Spam' will
 not be quarantined but delivered to your email server with the subject line as set in the that you have set in
 Probable Spam notation / Spam Notation fields. Unsure messages that are identified as probable spam
 based on the 'Probable spam threshold setting' are always sent to the recipient (and never quarantined)
 even if this option is enabled.
- Spam threshold Enter any value between 0.1 and 1.0. All mails that are having a score value above that
 value will be identified as spam and quarantined automatically as explained above. Please note this value
 should be always higher than 'Probable spam threshold' value.
- Probable spam threshold Enter any value between 0.0 and the value entered in Spam threshold field. All mails that are having a score value above that is set in this field will be identified as unsure mails and will be delivered to recipients with the subject line as set in the Probable Spam notation / Spam Notation field.
- **Days saved** Enter the number of days that you want the mails to be retained in the quarantine. The maximum number of days that can be set is 9999. The quarantined mails that are not checked, released or deleted within the stipulated days will be automatically deleted from the quarantine.
- Probable spam notation The prefix that will be appended to the subject line of all 'probable spam' emails sent to users. For example, "<Potentially Spam> Cheap deals on Dell computers" - where <Potentially Spam> is the text enterd in the 'Probable spam notation' field.
- Spam notation The prefix that will be appended to the subject line of all 'Spam' emails sent to users. For example, "<Spam> Order two Rolex watches and get a free carton of Viagra" where <Spam> is the text entered in the 'Spam notation' field. Note this only applies IF quarantine has been disabled (i.e. If the 'Quarantine Enabled' box is not checked).
- **Quarantine response** Choose the response to be sent by CASG to the SMTP server that delivered a message in the event that a mail is identified as spam.
- Note If you have enabled quarantine functionality, then spam/malicious mail will be quarantined (and not delivered to the recipient) regardless of your choice here. These options merely determine what message CASG will send back to the SMTP mail server. The available options are:
 - Rejected Will inform the SMTP server that the email has been rejected by CASG and placed in quarantine.
 - Accepted The email has passed the CASG spam filters and detected as a spam will be placed in quarantine in silent mode.
- Notify user about new quarantine message Select this option if you wish CASG to send a notification
email to the intended recipient, if a spam email addressed to the recipient is intercepted by CASG and moved to Quarantine. The notification email will contain a link to the email and a link for the user to login to the CASG User interface.

- The recipient will be able to click the link to directly read the email, without logging-in to CASG. The lifetime of the link is one day. If the user has not clicked the link within a day, the link will expire.
- If the user needs to respond to or delete the quarantined email, the user can click the next link to login to CASG, view their quarantined mails and carry out their desired actions
- Click the 'Save' button for your settings to take effect.
- To restore the settings to default, click 'Reset to Default'.

Report Spam

The Report Spam feature allows you to report suspected junk emails that have by-passed existing filters and landed in your inbox. CASG will analyze reported mails and, if found to be spam, will update its filters to quarantine similar mails in future. You can upload spam mails locally saved in your system into this area. CASG accepts a range of different mail formats, for example, .eml and .msg.

To report a spam mail

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Report spam' tab.



The Report Spam interface will open.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboa	rd - docteencesq.comodo.ed.ua / Report spen	
Report spam		🕑 Help
	Upload .eml format files only (max. size - 9 Mb)	

• Click the 'Upload' button

Navigate to the location where the suspected email(s) is/are stored in your system. Select the mail that you want to report as spam and click 'Open'. The maximum size of the file that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

Choose File to U	oload 🤶 🕺
Look jn:	🗀 suspected_mails 💽 📀 🈥 📰 -
My Recent Documents Desktop My Documents My Computer	Angel Beauty Clinic Apply. Get Real Quotes For Top Plans. Go With The Best Offer Europe Lottery - You won £500,000 MYCANADIAN PHARMACY Your Email Id has won 1,000,000.00 GBP in the British Microsoft Inc.
My Network Places	File name: Angel Beauty Clinic Open Files of type: All Files (*.*) Cancel

Note: Make sure to upload the file in email format only and size should not exceed 9 MB. Otherwise, the following warning message will be displayed.



The mail will be processed for uploading...

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamo	isg.comodo.od.ua / Report spam	
Report spam		🕑 Help
	Upload .eml format files only (max. size - 9 Mb)	
	File size: 349KB	

... and success message will be displayed.

Spam reported successfully	8

Click the solution to close the message.

Delivery Queue

In general, emails are delivered to the destination server directly and not stored on the filtering machines. But whenever an email destination server for an account is temporarily unavailable, all filtered mails are queued in the CASG servers for delivery at a later time. Emails that are permanently rejected by the destination server with a 5xx error code will not be queued and rejected by the CASG system. The queued emails can be accessed in the CASG interface and from here they can be manually force retried for delivery.

The queued messages on CASG severs are automatically retried for delivery for up to a period that is set in 'Maximum days to retry ' field in **domain settings** (for example, 4 days). The automatic retry schedule is given below:

- During the first two hours, the queued messages are retried for delivery at a fixed time interval of 15 minutes.
- During the next 14 hours, the queued messages are retried for delivery at a variable time interval starting from 15 minutes and multiplied by 1.5 with each attempted delivery. For example, after the first 15 minutes, the subsequent attempts will be after 22.5 minutes, 34 minutes and so on.
- From 16 hours since the delivery failure and up to 4 days, the queued messages are retried for delivery at a fixed time interval of every 6 hours.
- After a period of 4 days, all queued messages will be bounced to respective senders. The messages will be frozen if the bounce cannot be delivered immediately and retried for delivery at a fixed time interval of 3 days for the first 21 days. At the end of this period, delivery of messages will have failed permanently.

To manually force-deliver emails in queue

Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Delivery queue' tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The Incoming Delivery Queue area of the selected domain will open:

Dashboard / Domains	Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Incoming delivery queue							
ncoming delivery queue 😢 Help								
🖅 Force retry 🕻	🖅 Force retry 🗐 Show headers 🗐 Delivery diagnostic.							
Filters								
🔲 Queue id 🔷	In queue	Sender ^	Recipient ^	Message size	Subject ^	Last action 🔺	Server name	Delay reasons
SjRwrd24WTz12LF(52m	admin@antispamg;	john@docteamcasç	21577	New account registered	message_queue_ch	mta3.prod.casg	john@docteamcasc : connect to 91.196.95.19[91.19 Connection refused
Birtheright Strength Streng	52m	admin@antispamga	demo2@docteamca	21585	New account registered	message_queue_ch	mta1.prod.casg	demo2@docteamca : connect to 91.196.95.19[91.19 Connection refused
3jRwrY6XRGz12Lst	52m	admin@antispamga	bob@docteamcasg	21566	New account registered	message_queue_ch	mta3.prod.casg	bob@docteamcasg : connect to 91.196.95.19[91.19 Connection refused
D 3jRwrY0lY1zHnly	52m	admin@antispamga	demo1@docteamca	21586	New account registered	message_queue_ch	mta1.prod.casg	demo1@docteamca : connect to 91.196.95.19[91.19 Connection refused
								john@docteamcasc
3jRvmH6LYpzHnn6	1h 41m	admin@antispamga	john@docteamcasç	21576	New account registered	message_queue_ch	mta1.prod.casg	: connect to 91.196.95.19[91.19 Connection

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.



Using Filter option to search queued emails

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Incoming delivery queue	
Incoming delivery queue	? Help
Force retry Delivery diagnostic.	Refresh
S Filters	
	Apply filter
Queue id ^ In queue ^ Sender ^ Recipient ^ Message size ^ Subject ^ Last action ^ Server name ^	Delay reasons

You can add more filters by clicking **T** for narrowing down your search.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Incoming delivery queue

Inc	oming deliv	er	y queue						? Help
	Force retry 🗐 Show	v he	aders 🗐 Delivery diag	nostic.					Refresh
	Filters								
+	Queue id	~	contains 🗸					Ap	oply filter
-	Queue name	~	equals 🗸						
-	Sender	*	not contains 🗸						
-	Recipient	~	contains 🗸						
-	Message size	*	less than 🗸	0					
-	Subject	~	starts with						
-	Last action	*	ends with						
-	Server name	~	contains 🗸						
	Queue id 🔺 In queu	е	 Sender 	Recipient	Message size 🔺	Subject ^	Last action 🔺	Server name 🔺	Delay reasons
21991	b0nV7z12LB(demo@csg.como	demo1@docteamc	4752	Re: DQ demo 2	message_added	mta3.prod.casg	

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- Queue ID: Will execute a search of Queue ID according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Queue name: Will execute a search of Queue name according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Recipient Will indicate the email address of the recipient that is in the delivery request.
- Message size Will execute the message size settings according to the number selected in the 'Filters'.
- Subject: Will execute a search of subject according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Last action: Will execute a search of Last action according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Server name: Will execute a search of Server name according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Delay reason Will indicate the reason an email is queued and cannot be delivered immediately.



When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- Contains: Displays all queued mails that contain the words entered in the text box
- Equals: Displays the queued emails that have the same words as entered in the text box
- Not Equals: Displays the queued emails that do not have the words entered in the text box
- · Not Contains: Displays all queued emails that don't contain the words entered in the text box
- Starts With: Displays all queued mails that starts with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all queued mails that ends with the words entered in the text box.

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

- Sender: Will execute a search of senders according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Recipient:** Will execute a search of users according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Message size:** Will execute a search of mails according to the size selected or entered in third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Sender' and/or 'Recipient' option is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Contains: Displays all queued mails that contain the words entered in the text box
- Not Contains: Displays all queued emails that don't contain the words entered in the text box

If 'Message Size' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- · Less than: Displays the queued emails with size less than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Greater than: Displays the queued emails with size greater than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Refresh

button to display all the queued emails.

Note: To display all the queued emails after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

To force retry queued emails

Click the

- To force-deliver a single email manually, select an email from the delivery queue and click the 'Force retry' button.
- To force-deliver all email messages in the queue, select the checkbox beside 'Queue id' and click the 'Force retry' button.

Note: Frozen emails can't be force delivered from CASG interface.

To view headers queued emails

• Select an email from the delivery queue and click the 'Show headers' button.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

DQ message headers	×
	•
Received: from mxsrv2.spamgateway.comodo.com (unknown [10.200.1.248])	
by mta3.prod.casg (Postfix) with ESMTP id 3jRwrd24WTz12LFG	
for <john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua>; Tue, 28 Oct 2014 14:53:05 +0000 (UTC)</john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua>	
Received: from outbound.antispamgateway.comodo.com ([178.33.199.67]	
helo=antispamgateway.comodo.com)	
by mxsrv2.spamgateway.comodo.com with esmtps (TLSv1:DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA:256)	
(Exim 4.84)	
(envelope-from <admin@antispamgateway.comodo.com>)</admin@antispamgateway.comodo.com>	E
id 1Xj88t-0000n1-Kk	
for john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Tue, 28 Oct 2014 14:53:04 +0000	
Received: from ui3.prod.casg (unknown [10.200.1.248])	
by relay2.prod.casg (Postfix) with ESMTP id 3jRwrc47Cwz12QIn	
for <john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua>; Tue, 28 Oct 2014 14:53:04 +0000 (GMT)</john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua>	
Date: Tue, 28 Oct 2014 14:53:04 +0000 (GMT)	
From: admin@antispamgateway.comodo.com	
To: john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
Message-ID: <61067506.21561.1414507984634.JavaMail.root@ui3.prod.casg>	
Subject: New account registered	
MIME-Version: 1.0	

To view diagnose routes availability of an email message in delivery queue

• Select an email from the delivery queue and click the 'Delivery diagnostic' button.



Mail delivery diagnostics × MTA server availability [Relay : csg.comodo.od.ua:20] Error code : 500 Error message : SMTP host unreachable No entries on your request Log search (by queue ID) [Host: 10.200.1.121] 2014-10-28T15:38:37.045459+00:00 mta2 post_rest: [Tue Oct 28 15:38:37 2014] [debug] GET "/log/3jRwrY6XRGz12Ls6". Ξ [Host: 10.200.1.122] 2014-10-28T14:53:01.920681+00:00 mta3 postfix.mta/smtpd[18514]: 3jRwrY6XRGz12Ls6: client=unknown[10.200.1.248] 2014-10-28T14:53:01.921649+00:00 mta3 postfix.mta/cleanup[13104]: 3jRwrY6XRGz12Ls6: messageid=<891193322.21552.1414507981151.JavaMail.root@ui3.prod.casg> 2014-10-28T14:53:01.921661+00:00 mta3 postfix.mta/cleanup[13104]: 3jRwrY6XRGz12Ls6: subject=New account registered 2014-10-28T14:53:02.149219+00:00 mta3 postfix.mta/gmgr[26853]; 3jRwrY6XRGz12Ls6; from=<admin@antispamgateway.comodo.com>, size=21566, nrcpt=1 (gueue active) 2014-10-28T14:53:02.537662+00:00 mta3 postfix/relav/smtp[28190]: 3iRwrY6XRGz12Ls6:

Destination Routes

If there is a temporary problem with the primary email destination server, CASG will try to deliver the filtered mails to the next destination email server that is configured. If the failure is permanent, for example, unable to resolve hostname, CASG will try to deliver through the next alternative route.

To add additional destination routes

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Destination routes' tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The 'Destination routes' area of the selected domain will open:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Destination routes		
Destination routes 2 Help		
Add Delete		
Route A	Port	
🗐 🗢 csg.comodo.od.ua	25	
	Save priority	

• Click the 'Add' button to add another alternative destination route

The 'Destination routes' dialog box will be displayed.

Destina	ition routes	×
+		25
	Save Cancel	

- Enter the alternative destination route and click the 'Save' button
- The domain entered in the 'Destination routes' field is checked by Comodo Gateway diagnostic tool to assure the

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

destination route is entered by administrator correctly.

Routes check errors.	×
Relay : fhhfgjgkhlkjlj.com:25	
Error code : 500	
Error message : SMTP host unreachable	
Relay : dgdfgfjgkhlh.com:25	
Error code : 500	
Error message : SMTP host unreachable	
Are you sure you want to proceed with domain save?	
Proceed Cancel	

• Click 'Proceed' to save a domain.

The added route will be displayed in the list.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Destination routes		
Destination routes		
Add Delete		
Route	Port	
🗐 ≑ csg.comodo.od.ua	20	
Casg.comodo.od.ua 25		
	Save priority	

• If you want additional routes to be included, click 🕈 to add more alternative destination routes. You can also prioritize the routes by dragging and dropping from the list.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcas	sg.comodo.od.ua / Destination routes	
Destination routes	(? Help
Add Delete		
Route	Port	*
🔲 🗘 casg.comodo.od.ua	25	
🗐 🗘 csg.comodo.od.ua		
	Save priority	

• Click the 'Save priority' button to confirm the changes.

Click here for more details on how to check the routes.

Local Recipients

CASG continuously performs a cached recipient callouts to check that recipient email addresses do actually exist in the destination mail servers. When the 'Local Recipients' option is enabled, only existing and valid email accounts in the destination server will be accepted. When this option is selected, *all the recipients* have to be added manually, else even valid users for that account will not receive emails. Comodo recommends that this option should be used in specific cases only and not required in normal cases.

To add local recipients

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Local recipients' tab.



The Local Recipients configuration area of the selected domain will open:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Local recipients	
Local recipients	P Help
Use local recipients: 🗹 Save	
Add Delete Delete	
Local recipient	*
No items found	
I I /1 ▶ [1 - 0 / 0] Per page	15 🗸

- Select the 'Use local recipients' check box and click the 'Save' button
- Click the 'Add' button

.

The 'Add local recipient' dialog box will open.

Add local recipient		×
E-mail	@ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
	Save	

Enter the recipient's in the E-mail field

Add local recipient		×
E-mail user1	@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
	Save	

Click the 'Save' button

Repeat the process till you have added all the users.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Local recipients	
Local recipients	Help
Use local recipients: 🛛 Save	
Add Delete Import from CSV file	
Local recipient	*
user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
user2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
I 1 /1 > > I Per page	e 15 🗸

To delete a local recipient

• Select the user that you want to delete and click the 'Delete' button

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Local recipients	
Local recipients	? Help
Use local recipients: 🗹 Save	
Add Delete 🗗 Import from CSV file	
Local recipient	*
✓ user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
user2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
I	15 🗸

Click 'OK' to confirm.

.



The selected recipient will be deleted from the list

Tip: You can select multiple recipients to delete by pressing and holding the Shift or Ctrl keys.

To import local recipients from CSV file

You can add many new users at a time by importing from a file. The users should be saved in separate lines as shown below:

user1 user2 user3

.

Click the 'Import from CSV file' to import new users from a CSV file.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Local recipients			
Local recipients		🕐 н	lelp
Use local recipients: 🛛 Save			
Add Delete Import from CSV file			
Local recipient			*
✓ user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
user2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
	Per page	15	~

 Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The maximum size of the file that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

Upload	X
Upload csv file. Each line should contains the username of a local recipient For example:	
testuser testuser	
Upload	

The upload will be placed in import tasks queue and the progress of the upload will be displayed. If you want to remove the upload from the queue, click the 'Remove import task' button. The 'Remove import task' deletes *only* a remaining part of not imported task.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Local recipients	
Local recipients	Help
Import is in process. Please wait	
Use local recipients: 🗹 Save	
Cocal recipient	-
🗐 user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	<u>^</u>
user2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	×
	Per page 15 🗸

On completion of the upload process, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamoasa.comodo.od.ua / Local recipients			
Local recipients		0 H	lelp
Total lines processed 7			×
Imported 6 user(s)			
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finished			×
Use local recipients: 🗹 Save			
+ Add 🗊 Delete 🏥 Import from CSV file			
Local recipient			^
alan@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
🔄 black@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
E bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
I duncan@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
im jenny@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
ismith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
📰 user1 @docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
📰 user2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
	Per page	15	~

The local recipients from .csv file will be uploaded and the administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Clear Incoming Cache

CASG continuously performs a cached recipient callouts to check that recipient email addresses do actually exist in the destination mail servers. When an email for a certain recipient is permanently rejected by the destination server with a 5xx error code, the destination address of the recipient is considered invalid and all emails sent to the recipient will be rejected. CASG filtering servers caches this information locally for up to two hours. CASG interface allows you to clear the callout cache without waiting for the servers to clear it.

To clear incoming cache

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Clear incoming cache' tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Clear incoming cache' area of the selected domain will open:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteancasa.comodo.od.ua / Clear Incoming cache	
Clear incoming cache	Help
Here you can clear the incoming callout cache for domain	

• Click the 'Clear' button

The callout cache for the incoming domain is cleared.

Deshboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteancasg.comodo.od.us / Clear Incoming cache	
Clear incoming cache	🕐 Help
Cache was successfully cleared.	
Here you can clear the incoming callout cache for domain	

- Click the $\textcircled{\mbox{\footnotesize S}}$ button to close the notification.



Log Search

The Log Search option in CASG allows you to search for a specific email message.

To search logs for incoming mails

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Log search' tab.



The 'Log search (incoming)' interface of the selected domain will open:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Log search (incoming)							
Log search (incoming)	Help					
Date range:	2014-10-26 AM 10:49:15						
Message ID:							
Sender.							
Recipient:	@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua						
Sender IP.							
Sender host:							
Predicate:	AND						
Include results from the last minutes:							
	Search						

- Date range: Select the date range for which you want to search the log file. The date range for which the log search can be processed depends on the settings configured in Domain Settings > Log retention period.
- Message ID Enter a unique message identifier (optional)
- Sender: Enter a sender email address in this field.
- Recipient: Enter the email address in this field (for example, 'testuser1').
- Sender IP: Enter the IP address of the sender.
- Sender Host: Enter the sender host name.
- Predicate: You have the option to select either 'AND' or 'OR' in the drop-down. When you choose 'AND' option, all the
 entered search terms will be searched together and when you choose 'OR' option, the application will search any of
 the search items entered.
- Include results from the last minutes: If selected, CASG will include messages that are currently being migrated from the filtering server to the logging server in the search results.

The option "Include results from the last minutes" will slow down the search result retrieval

• Click the 'Search' button.

CASG will search for the entered terms and display the results.

×

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Date and time	Host (Exim id)	Sender hostname	Sender ^	Recipient 🔺	Subject 🔷	Classification
2014-10-28 13:37:05	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6xK-0008ET-B2	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo1	,DQ demo 2	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:37:05	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6xK-0008ET-B2	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	,DQ demo 2	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:36:33	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6wo-0007pb-Ag	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo1	,Re: DQ demo	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:36:33	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6wo-0007pb-Ag	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	,Re: DQ demo	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:34:32	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 1 Xj6up-00070G-Jb	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.65	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo1	,DQ demo	Rejected Rejected by relay restriction for this recipient
2014-10-28 13:34:32	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 1 Xj6up-00070G-Jb	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.65	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	,DQ demo	Rejected Rejected by relay restriction for this recipient
2014-10-28 13:26:19	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6ms-0008Pk-CK	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	Archive email 2	Accepted

Domain Aliases

The Domain aliasing feature in CASG allows the administrator to add multiple domains as aliases for the main domain. After adding a domain alias, the MX records should be configured to activate the filtering process for this domain alias. Once this is done, mails sent to users at alias domain will be filtered and delivered to users at main domain. For example, if you add *testdomain.org* as an alias domain for the main domain *testdomain.com* and mail sent to *user1@testdomain.org* will be filtered and delivered to user1@testdomain.org will be filtered and delivered to *user1@testdomain.org* will be filtered and *user1@testdomain.org*.

To add domain aliases

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Archive' tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Domain Aliases' interface of the selected domain will open:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteancase comodo.od.ue / Domain aliases	
Domain aliases	Help
🕂 Add 🗊 Delete	
Alias	-
No items found	

Click the 'Add' button to add a domain alias for the selected domain

The 'Add domain alias' dialog box will open.

Add don	nain alias		×
Alias			
	Save	Cancel	

Enter the domain alias name in the 'Alias' field



Add domain alias	×
Alias	
alias.od.ua	
Save	Cancel

Click the 'Save' button

The domain will be added to the main domain as alias and will be listed in the interface.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcase.comodo.ad.un / Domain alases	
Domain aliases	Help
+ Add Delete	
🔄 Alias	
🔄 alias.od.ua	

• To delete a domain alias, select the domain alias from the list and click the 'Delete' button

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcase.comodo.od.ug / Domain aliases	
Domain aliases	🕐 Help
+ Add Delete	
🔽 Alias	
🗹 alias.od.ua	

• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.



The selected domain alias will be deleted from the list.

Domain Settings

An administrator can configure various settings for the selected domain such as primary contact email address, the administrator's email address and maximum number of bounces allowed before being rejected.

To configure domain settings

• Click the 'Incoming' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Domain settings' tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The 'Domain Settings' interface of the selected domain will open:

Maximum bounces: 6000 Log retention period: 30 Maximum days to retry: 4 Max. number of users: Unlimited	
Log retention period: 30 Maximum days to retry: 4	
Maximum days to retry: 4	
Max number of users: Unlimited	
Enable archive cleanup:	
Archive months to store:	
Enable user auto-login: 💟	
Days before cookie expiration:	
Email for license notifications: user1@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	

• Maximum bounces: Each recipient of the selected domain will be limited to receive only these many message bounces set in this field per hour (messages from postmaster addresses or with an empty envelope sender). Please note that if the number of bounces exceeds the limit set in this field, the messages are not quarantined but are permanently rejected and will not be received later. You can set this to a low value, if the users at the selected domain do not send mails to invalid addresses frequently. By default this field is set to 6000.

- Log retention period: All spam and non spam email connections to a domain are logged in the CASG server. By default the storage period of this log is 30 days. You can store the log for a longer period by entering the number of days that you want to store in the field. After the end of set period, the log data will be moved to a separate storage and cannot be retrieved.
- **Maximum days to retry:** If the destination route has temporary problems, the messages are queued and automatically retried at fixed intervals for the number of days entered in the field. Even after this period if the emails cannot be delivered, they are bounced to the sender. By default, this is set to 4 days, the main reason being that the senders should be aware that his/her messages are not being delivered for 4 days.
- Max. number of users: Enter the maximum of users that can be added for this domain. Leaving this setting as 'Unlimited' will allow you to add up to, but not exceed, the maximum number of users permitted by your current license. This can also be done while creating a domain or in the editing domain interface.
- Enable archive cleanup: This setting enables or disables the auto-clean up of incoming archived mails in the archive storage. This option is available for customers that has purchased archive storage from Comodo.
- Archive months to store: This setting becomes active if the 'Enable archive cleanup' checkbox is selected. Enter the period for which the archived mails should be stored after which the messages will be purged automatically.
- Enable user auto-login: If enabled, end-users can login into their CASG account without entering their credentials. On first login, the users will be asked to confirm their auto login. The users can also change the settings on their 'My Profile' page. The users' credentials will be stored in the browser' as autologin cookie and will be valid for the number of days that is entered in the next field 'Days before cookie expiration'.
- Days before cookie expiration: This will enabled only if the 'Enable user auto-login' check box is selected. Enter the validity period of the autlogin cookie in days after which the users have to provide credentials while accessing their CASG account. The period starts after each login by the user.
- Email for license notification: Enter the email address for receiving license notifications for this domain. You can enter different email addresses for different domains for receiving notifications with respect to CASG license. If the field is left blank, then license notifications will be sent to admins' registered email address in Comodo Accounts Manager (CAM).

Note: The number of users that you can add for all the domains belonging to your account depends on your subscription plan. For example, if the subscription plan for your account allows you to add 1000 users and you have three domains, then you can add 300 users for domain 1, 300 users for domain 2 and 400 users for domain 3. You can set any value between 0 and 999999 in the 'Max. number of users' field, but CASG checks if the total number of users for all domains is within your license limit.

- Click 'Reset to default' to reset default settings in CASG.
- Click the 'Save' button.

A confirmation dialog indicating the successful configuration of the domain settings will be displayed. Click 'X'.

Successfully saved

Manage Report Subscriptions for Selected Domain

The Manage report subscriptions interface accessible from the 'Incoming' configuration area of a selected domain allows the administrator to configure the subscription to the periodical Domain, User import and Quarantine summary reports generated for that domain. The administrator can also specify the self and peer administrators of that domain to whom the reports are to be delivered. Refer to **CASG Reports - an Overview** for more details on the reports.

To access Manage report subscriptions interface

Click the 'Incoming' tab from the left hand side navigation to expand it and then click the 'Manage report subscriptions' tab.

×

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Manage report subscriptions' interface will be displayed:



lanage repo	rt subscript	ions						0 H
Report recipients								
🛇 Domain statist	tics report							
Period	Hour	Day of month	Day of week		Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GMT)	Report length
	Every hour Choose	Every day Choose	©Every week day @Choose					
	🖾 o 📩	1	Sunday	*				
Weekly 🖌	1	2	📰 Monday	E	20°			
	2	🖾 3	🕮 Tuesday					
	🖾 3	E 4	🖾 Wednesday					
	🖺 4 🗸	E 5 🖕	m Thursday	-				
Quarantine rep	port							
Quarantine rel	ease report							
Reported Spa	m report							
Users auto-im	port report							

The Report recipients field will not be auto-populated as it does in the interface of **Customer Management** > **Managing Report Subscriptions**. Enter the email address of the administrators belonging to that domain in the text field separated by a comma after each email address.

Manage r	eport subscri	ptions				🕑 Help
Report recip	lients					
user77@csgq	a4.comodo.od.ua,user1@	gcsgqa4.comodo.od.ua				Ĵ.
O Domain	statistics report					
		Day of month	Day of week	Send empty E	nabled Start date (GMT)	Report length

- You can expand/collapse a report configuration section by clicking on the respective strip.
- Clicking the 'Reset settings to default' button will disable all the reports. The 'Report Recipients' field will not be cleared.

The administrator can configure the subscription for three types of reports from this interface:

- Quarantine Report The periodical report which can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly will
 contain a detailed statistics of the mails that are identified as spam or containing malicious content and moved to
 Quarantine of the domain automatically by CASG. Refer to CASG Reports An Overview for more details.
- Domain Statistics Report The periodical report which can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly will contain a detailed statistics of number of users, mails that have been received at and sent from the domain, number of spams identified and blocked and so on. Refer to CASG Reports An Overview for more details.
- Users auto-import report The periodical report which can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly will contain details of new users that were auto-imported based on incoming mails received for them at the

mail server. For more details on configuring CASG for auto-importing new users, refer to the section Managing User Auto-import. Fore more details on the reports, refer to the section CASG Reports - An Overview .

- Quarantine Release Report The periodical report which can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly will contain a detailed statistics of the quarantined mails that are released by the administrator to the recipient. Refer to CASG Reports An Overview for more details.
- Reported Spam Report The periodical report which can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly will contain a detailed statistics of the mails that are reported as spam by administrators and users. Refer to CASG Reports - An Overview for more details.

To configure the subscription of the reports

- If you want the administrators of the account to receive the periodical reports, select the 'Enabled' checkbox in the row of the respective report type. If both the reports are required, you can select both the checkboxes.
- Leave the 'Send empty' checkbox unchecked if empty reports are not to be sent to recipients.
- Select the frequency of the report to be sent to the administrators from the options for:
 - Quarantine Report;
 - Domain Statistics Report;
 - User Auto-Import Report;
 - Quarantine Release Report; and
 - Reported Spam Report.

Quarantine Report

Quaranti	ne report						
Hour	Day of month	Day of week		Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GMT)	Report length
©Every hour @Choose	Every day Choose	©Every week day @Choose					
0	E 1 🔺	Monday	~				
1	2	📰 Tuesday		E71		Jun 29, 2015 03:00	Next report for 3 day(s) from last
2	E 3	💹 Wednesday	E				run (2015-06-25 17:00)
V 3	E 4	📗 Thursday					
4	5 🗸	💟 Friday	-				

- Hour The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every hour or at the selected hour(s) of the day or date chosen from 'Day of month' or 'Day of week' columns.
- **Day of month** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every month chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Day of week** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every week chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- Start date Displays the start date of the report generation depending on the options chosen (as per Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)).
- **Report length** Displays the period of the report that will be generated depending on the options chosen.

Domain Statistics Report

Oomain statistic	s report						
Period	Hour	Day of month	Day of week	Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GMT)	Report length
	Every hour Choose	Every day Choose	©Every week day @Choose				
Weekly	🖾 o 🛄	1 2	🔳 Sunday				Next report for last week(s) from last
	E 1		Monday =		1	Jun 29, 2015	
	2	2 3	Tuesday			00:00	run (2015-06-22 17:00)
	🖾 3	E 4	🖾 Wednesday				
	🖾 4 🗸	🖾 5 🖕	🖾 Thursday 🖕				

- **Period** Enables you to set the period to be covered in the report. The report will contain the statistics of all the domains in the account for the past one hour, one week, one month or one year, as selected from dropdown from the scheduled report time.
- Hour The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every hour or at the selected hour(s) of the day or date chosen from 'Day of month' or 'Day of week' columns.
- **Day of month** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every month chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Day of week** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every week chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- Start date Displays the start date of the report generation depending on the options chosen (as per Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)).
- **Report length** Displays the period of the report that will be generated depending on the options chosen.

Hour	Day of month	Day of week	Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GMT)	Report length
©Every hour Choose	 Every day Choose 	 Every week day Choose 				
3	1	🔳 Tuesday 📩 ^				
E 4 💷	2	🕅 Wednesday		1	Feb 05, 2016 05:00	Next report for 224 day(s) from
▼ 5	2 3	Thursday			last run (2015-06-25 17:00)	
6	E 4	Friday =				
[¹⁰] 7 +	5 -	🖾 Saturday 📮				

User Auto-Import Report

- Hour The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every hour or at the selected hour(s) of the day or date chosen from 'Day of month' or 'Day of week' columns.
- Day of month The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day
 every month chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Day of week** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every week chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Start date** Displays the start date of the report generation depending on the options chosen (as per Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)).
- **Report length** Displays the period of the report that will be generated depending on the options chosen.

Quarantine Release Report

O Quarantine release report						
Hour	Day of month	Day of week	Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GMT)	Report length
Choose	●Every day ○Choose	 Every week day Choose 			********	
0	1	🛛 Sunday				
☑ 1	2	Monday		1	Jun 28, 2015 01:00	Next report for 95 day(s) from
2	🖾 3	🖸 Tuesday				last run (2015-03-25 00:00)
2 3	🖾 4	🖸 Wednesday				
E 4 🗸	E 5 -	🕅 Thursday 🖕				

- Hour The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every hour or at the selected hour(s) of the day or date chosen from 'Day of month' or 'Day of week' columns.
- Day of month The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day
 every month chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Day of week** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every week chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Start date** Displays the start date of the report generation depending on the options chosen (as per Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)).
- **Report length** Displays the period of the report that will be generated depending on the options chosen.

Reported Spam Report

Hour	Day of month	Day of week	Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GMT)	Report length
©Every hour Choose	Every day Choose	Every week day Choose				
0	1	🔽 Sunday 🔥				
1	2	Monday =		1	Jun 28, 2015 02:00	Next report for 95 day(s) from
2	3	Tuesday				last run (2015-03-25 00:00)
3	E 4	🔲 Wednesday				
🖪 4 🔍	E 5 🗸	🕅 Thursday 🖕				

- Hour The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every hour or at the selected hour(s) of the day or date chosen from 'Day of month' or 'Day of week' columns.
- **Day of month** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every month chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Day of week** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every week chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Start date** Displays the start date of the report generation depending on the options chosen (as per Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)).
- **Report length** Displays the period of the report that will be generated depending on the options chosen.
- Click 'Save' for your settings to take effect.

Relay Restrictions

The 'Relay restrictions' interface allows administrators to specify Message Transfer Agents (MTA), mail servers or other mail relays from which incoming mail to a domain should be accepted or strictly rejected.

For example, a business that has regional offices can configure their regional systems to accept only incoming emails from the email servers at the home office.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Email administrators can define the Organization names from which emails can be accepted or rejected. CASG parses the mail headers of each incoming mail to ensure the existence of an MTA's IP address or FQDN of the organization before accepting the mail. If the organization name is not known, administrators can use the 'Lookup' feature from the interface itself by entering the IP address of the email domain name of an incoming mail.

To add a relay restriction rule

• Click the 'Incoming' tab from the left hand side navigation then click the 'Relay Restrictions' tab:

¢	COMODO Antispam Gateway	
	Gol	
\bigcirc	Dashboard	
۲	Domain dashboard	
٢	incoming	~
	Quarantine	
	Archive	
	Spam detection settings	
	Report spam	
	Delivery queue	
	Destination routes	
	Local recipients	
	Clear incoming cache	
	Log search	
	Domain aliases	
	Domain settings	
	Manage report subscriptions	
\subset	Relay restrictions	
	Geolocation restrictions	
(t)		

The relay restrictions interface for the selected domain will open:

ashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Relay restrictions					
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 🥒 E	dit				
Restrict email acceptance to t	Restrict email acceptance to the following relay servers				
Organization name	Policy				
Google Inc.	Accept				

- Select the 'Restrict email acceptance to the following relay servers' check box .
- Click the 'Add' button

The 'Add restriction' dialog will appear.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Add restriction				
Organization name :				
Policy Accept Reject 				
Lookup IP for organization name :				
Lookup				
Save Cancel				

- Enter the organization name in the 'Organization name' text box
 - If you are not sure about the organization name, obtain the IP address of the mail server from any incoming
 mail from the organization and enter it in the 'Lookup IP for organization name' field. Click 'Lookup' to
 perform the search.
 - CASG will perform a lookup from WHOIS.com website and auto-populate the Organization name field.
- Choose the acceptance policy for emails from the organization's mail server:
 - Accept All mails from the selected organizations will be accepted. Those from other organizations will be blocked.
 - Reject All mails from the selected organizations will be blocked. Those from other organizations will be accepted.
 - Click 'Save' for the rule to take effect.

Relay restrictions now enabled.

Repeat the process till you have added all the organizations.

The administrator need to add a rule for each organization from which the mails are to be accepted or rejected.

Illustrations:

1. For example, if you want to accept mails only from two domains, namely gooddomain1.com and gooddomain2.com and reject mails from all the other mail servers, create two rules, one for gooddomain1.com and other for gooddomain2.com.

- Rule 1 Accept gooddomain1.com and block all other domains
- Rule 2 Accept gooddomain2.com and block all other domains

Only the incoming mails from gooddomain1.com and gooddomain2.com will be accepted. Those from all the other domains will be rejected.

2. For example, if you want to block mails only from two domains, namely baddomain1.com and baddomain2.com and allow mails from all the other mail servers, create two rules, one for baddomain1.com and other for baddomain2.com.

- Rule 1 Reject baddomain1.com and allow all other domains
- Rule 2 Reject baddomain2.com and allow all other domains

Only the incoming mails from baddomain1.com and baddomain2.com will be blocked. Those from all the other domains will be accepted.

You can create any number of 'Allow' and 'Reject' rules. The 'Accept 'rules have more priority and reject rules will be skipped in case of any rule conflict.

×

The incoming mails from blacklisted domains in the global or domain blacklist will be rejected even if they are accepted by the relay restrictions rules. The priority order of rules checked on allowing an email is as follows:

- 1. Global blacklist
- 2. Domain whitelist/blacklist
- Relay restriction rules
 Per user whitelist/blacklist

Note: The 'Relay restrictions' is disabled for TRIAL customers.

Editing Relay Restriction Rules

You can change the organization name or acceptance policy of any rule at any time.

To edit a rule

• Choose the rule to be edited and and click the 'Edit' button.

Add Delete	shboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Relay restrictions Edit
Restrict email acceptance to	the following relay servers
Organization	Policy
Coogle Inc.	Accept
C Yahoo	Accept
Rediff.com India Limited,	Accept
Organizatio	on name : n India Limited,
Policy (0)	Accept ©Reject for organization name :
Lookup	

The Add/Edit restriction dialog will appear.

- Edit the fields and policy options as required. For more details refer to the explanation under To add a Relay . **Restriction Rule.**
- Click 'Save' for your changes to take effect. •

Removing Relay Restriction Rules

You can remove unwanted rules at anytime from CASG.

To remove a Relay Restriction rule

Choose the rule you want to remove and click the 'Delete' button •

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Add Delete	dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Relay restrictions Edit	
Organization name	Policy	
🔘 Google Inc.	Accept	
🔘 ahoo	Accept	
Rediff.com India Limited,	Accept	
Delete rest	rictions X you sure you want to delete the selected rictions?	

• Click 'OK' in the confirmation dialog.

Geolocation Restrictions

The 'Geolocation restrictions' interface allows administrators to specify the country from which CASG administrators and users can access the CASG web interface. By creating access control policies, you have better control in deciding from which locations admins and users can access the web interface thus minimizing the security threat.

To create a geolocation policy

• Click the 'Incoming' tab from the left hand side navigation then click the 'Geolocation restrictions' sub tab:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The geolocation restrictions interface for the selected domain will open:

Dashboard / Domains / Dom	ashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - csqqa4.comodo.od.ua / Geolocation restrictions			
Geolocation r	estrictions			
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete	/ Edit			
Enable geolocation res	strictions			
Country name	Country code	Policy		
O United States	US	Accept		
🔘 Angola	AO	Reject		

Enable geolocation restrictions – Allows administrators to apply the geolocation restriction policies. Select the check box to apply the policies in the list.

From the interface, you can:

- Add a geolocation restriction policy
- Edit a geolocation restriction policy
- Delete a geolocation restriction policy

To add a new geolocation restriction policy

Click the 'Add' button

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Dom	nain dashboard - csoqa4.comodo.od.ua / Geolocation	restrictions	
Geolocation r	estrictions		
Add 🗇 Delete	/ Edit		
Enable geolocation re	strictions		
Country name	Country code	Policy	
		Accept	

The 'Add country restriction' dialog will appear.

Add country restriction	×
Choose country	~
Policy accept CReject	
Save Cancel	

Select the country from the 'Choose country' drop-down

Add country restriction	×
Choose country	
1	~
Afghanistan	*
Aland Islands	=
Albania	10
Algeria	
American Samoa	
Andorra	
Angola	
Anguilla	
Anonymous Proxy	
Antarctica	
Antigua and Barbuda	
Argentina	
Armenia	
Aruba	
Asia/Pacific Region	
Australia	
Austria	
Azerbaijan	-
Bahamac	

- Choose the geolocation restriction policy for accessing the CASG web interface
- Accept Admins and users from these countries are allowed to access the web interface
- Reject Admins and users from these countries are not allowed to access the web interface

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Add country restriction	×
Choose country Afghanistan Policy ©Accept ®Reject	*
Save Cancel	

Click 'Save' to create the policy

To edit a geolocation restriction policy

A geolocation restriction policy cannot be edited for a country. But you can change the country for the policy.

• Select the policy for which you want to change the country and click the 'Edit' button

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - csooa4.comodo.od.ua / Geolocation restrictions						
Geolocation	restrictions					
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete	Edit)					
Enable geolocatio	strictions					
Country name	Country code	Policy				
O United States	US	Accept				
O Argola	AO	Reject				
Afghanistan	AF	Reject				

• Select a different country from the drop-down

Add country restriction	×
Choose country	
Afghanistan	~
Policy OAccept OReject	

Click the 'Save' button for the changes to take effect

To delete a geolocation restriction policy

• Select the policy that you want to remove from the list and click the 'Delete' button

Dashboard / Domains / Dor	nain dashboard - csoca4 comodo od ua / Geolocatio	restrictions	
Geolocation	estrictions		
Add Delete Enable geolocation re	Edit strictions		
Countryname	Country code	Policy	
O United States	US	Accept	
Angola	AO	Reject	
Antarctica	AQ	Reject	

Click 'OK' to confirm the removal of the selected geolocation restriction policy from the list



The policy will be removed from the list.

3.2.1.1.4.3 Outgoing

To be able to send outgoing email, first a valid user needs to be added to the filter cluster. This can be done from the **web** interface. The following ports are available for the outgoing service:

- SMTP AUTH: Port 25 or 587
- SMTP StartTLS Port 587
- SMTP SSL Port 465

Comodo recommends port 587. The outgoing service listens by default on all IPv4 addresses activated on the server.

Create a separate outgoing user on the filtering cluster for each end-user to relay outgoing email and use an "automatic user locking" to automatically close the account in case abuse is detected. There are two methods you can make per-user authentication to work - The first method is to instruct all end-users to authenticate directly to the filter cluster for their outgoing emails or in the second method, configure your current outgoing SMTP server so that it authenticates each end-user separately to the filter cluster for all outgoing emails. If you choose the second method, how easily you can configure your SMTP server depends on the SMTP software.

While using per-user authentication for outgoing mails, ensure to set the limits correctly based on the usage of the end-user and enable automatic locking.

If you find using the per-user authentication method for outgoing mails too cumbersome to set up, the other alternative is to use smarthost setup. In this method, you add a single outgoing account either based on IP or username/password in the filtering server and point all outgoing emails to this server, thus using the filtering cluster as smarthost. Most email servers have 'smarthost setting' feature with which you can easily accomplish the task of configuring outgoing email filtering. Make sure to disable the 'automatic user locking' setting to prevent the full server account getting locked even if one end-user sends out spam email. Also ensure to enable 'block spam' so that individual spam messages will be blocked and the administrator notified.

While using smarthosting setup for outgoing mail filtering, ensure to set the limits correctly per user based on the server.

In the 'Outgoing' area of the Manage Domain section you can set a user account for spam checking, clear outgoing cache, search for outgoing email messages and outgoing spam checking.
COMODO Creating Trust Online*



Click the following links for more details:

- Clear outgoing cache
- Log search
- Users

Clear outgoing cache

CASG continuously performs a cached recipient callouts to check that recipient email addresses existing/non-existing email accounts at the destination mail servers to minimize the number of recipient callouts. When an email for a certain recipient is permanently rejected by the destination server with a 5xx error code, the destination address of the recipient is considered invalid and all emails sent to the recipient will be rejected. CASG filtering servers caches this information locally for up to two hours. CASG interface allows you to clear the callout cache without waiting for the servers to clear it.

To clear outgoing cache

• Click the 'Outgoing' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Clear outgoing cache' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Clear outgoing cache' area of the selected domain will be displayed:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteancesg comodo.od.ue / Clear outgoing cache	
Clear outgoing cache	🕐 Help
Here you can clear the outgoing callout cache for domain	
🤿 Clear	

• Click the 'Clear' button.

The callout cache for the outgoing domain is cleared.



• Click 'X' to close the 'Cache successfully cleared' dialog box.

Log search

The Log Search option in CASG allows you to search for a specific outgoing email message.

• Click the 'Outgoing' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Log search' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Log Search (Outgoing)' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Log search (outgoing)						
Log search (outgoing))	Help				
Date range:	2014-10-26 AM 11:38:40 🔛 - 2014-10-27 AM 11:38:40 🔛					
Message ID:						
Sender.						
User.	@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua					
Recipient:						
Sender IP.						
Sender host:						
Predicate:	AND 🗸					
Classification:	All					
Include results from the last minutes:						
	Search Download					

- Date range: Select the date range for which you want to search the log file. The date range for which the log search can be processed depends on the settings configured in Domain Settings > Log retention period.
- Message ID Enter a unique message identifier (optional)
- Sender: Enter the sender email address in this field.

×

Comodo Antispam Gateway - Administrator Guide

- User: Enter the username of the outgoing email address for in this field (for example, 'testuser1').
- Recipient: Enter the email address in this field. (for example, 'testuser1@example.com').
- Sender IP: Enter the IP address of the sender.
- **Sender Host:** Enter the sender host name.
- **Predicate:** You have the option to select either 'AND' or 'OR' in the drop-down. When you choose 'AND' option, all the entered search terms will be searched together and when you choose 'OR' option, the application will search any of the search items entered.
- · Classification: Select the type of email that you want to search from the drop-down options.
- **Include results from the last minutes**: If selected, CASG will include messages that are currently being migrated from the filtering server to the logging server in the search results.

The option "Include results from the last minutes" will slow down the search result retrieval

Click the 'Search' button. CASG will search for the entered terms and display the results.

Date and time	Host (Exim id)	Sender hostname	Sender ^	Recipient ^	Subject 🔷	Classification
2014-10-28 13:37:05	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6xK-0008ET-B2	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo1	,DQ demo 2	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:37:05	mxsrv1.spamgateway.com 1Xj6xK-0008ET-B2	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	,DQ demo 2	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:36:33	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6wo-0007pb-Ag	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo1	,Re: DQ demo	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:36:33	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6wo-0007pb-Ag	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	,Re: DQ demo	Accepted Message content looked like non-spam
2014-10-28 13:34:32	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 1 Xj6up-00070G-Jb	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.65	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo1	,DQ demo	Rejected Rejected by relay restriction for this recipient
2014-10-28 13:34:32	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 1 Xj6up-00070G-Jb	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.65	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	,DQ demo	Rejected Rejected by relay restriction for this recipient
2014-10-28 13:26:19	mxsrv1.spamgateway.con 1Xj6ms-0008Pk-CK	mxsrv2.spamgateway.con 178.33.199.66	demo@csg.comodo.od.u	demo2	Archive email 2	Accepted

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Downloading the Report

•

The 'Download' button allows users to download the log report of sent mails for the filters entered and/or selected.

Click the Download button.

The download dialog will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Opening outgoing.doc	teamcasg.comodo.od.ua.logs.zip						
You have chosen to	You have chosen to open:						
📜 outgoing.doct	eamcasg.comodo.od.ua.logs.zip						
which is: Winf	VAR ZIP archive						
from:							
What should Firefor	do with this file?						
Open with	WinRAR.ZIP (default)						
Save File							
Do this <u>a</u> uto	Do this automatically for files like this from now on.						
	OK Cancel						

You can choose to open the file by using the browse option or save the file in your system. The compressed log file will be saved in the folder that you have configured for saving download files. The values in the log report will be separated by commas and this file can be opened with appropriate application such as Excel or Openoffice Calc for easy analysis.

Users

Outgoing email messages should be checked for spam or malicious content because of the risk such content poses to the organization's reputation. Often the outbound email path bypasses the system that scans incoming emails from the internet, and instead sends the emails directly out to the destination. Filtering the outgoing user's mail also prevent spam from reaching end user mailboxes.

Configuring User's Email Client for Outgoing Mail Filtering

The email clients of the users added for outgoing email filtering must be configured to point to CASG service.

In the Account Settings interface of the user's email client, enter the following details:

- Smtp server: mxpool1.spamgateway.comodo.com
- Connection Security: STARTTLS or SSL
- Port : 587
- Username: <username@domainname.com>

To access the 'Outgoing users' interface:

• Click the 'Outgoing' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Users' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The 'Users' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcaso, comodo.od.ua / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	🕜 Help
🕂 Add 🗊 Delete 🥒 Edit More actions 🗸	Refresh
S Filters	
Username *	Locked
bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using Filter option to search users

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasa.comodo.od.ua / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	Help
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🖉 Edit More actions 🗸	Refresh
S Filters	
+ Username 🗸 contains 🗸	Apply filter
🔄 Username	Locked
🗐 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🖾 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

You can add more filters by clicking + for narrowing down your search.

Dashboard / Domains / Do	main dashb	oard - docteamcaso	comodo od us / Outgoi	ng users		
Outgoing us	ers					🕜 Help
+ Add 🗊 Delete	e de Ed	it More action	•			Refresh
S Filters						
+ Usemame	~	contains	v			Apply filter
- Usemame	~	equals	~			
🗐 Username					Locked	
🗏 bob@docteamcas	g.comodo.	od.ua				

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

• **Username:** Will execute a search of usernames according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Username' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all usernames that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all users except the one entered in the text box.
- Contains: Displays all username(s) that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all username(s) that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all usernames(s) that starts with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all usernames(s) that ends with the words entered in the text box.

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the

🗄 Refresh

button to display all the outgoing users.

Note: To display all the users after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

To add a new user

• Click the 'Add' button.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.or	d.us / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users		🕜 Help
Add To Delete 🖉 Edit More actions. 🗸		Refresh
Filters		
E Username	Locked	
📰 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		
🔲 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		

The 'Add outgoing user' dialog will be displayed.

Add outgoing user		×
Username	Domain doctoamcasa comodo	Password
	Edit outgoing settings	
	Save Cancel	

- Enter the username for the new outgoing user that will be first part of the email address. For example, testuser. The email address of the added user will be testuser@testdomain.com.
- Enter the password in the Password filed. If the 'Password' field is left blank, then the 'Username' must be an IP address, and any connection from that IP will be considered authenticated without needing to use SMTP AUTH (Note: authorizing IP addresses may be disabled on the system).
- Click the 'Edit outgoing settings' button to configure outgoing settings for the user. The 'Add outgoing settings' dialog will expand:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Add outgoing user				×
Username	Domain	isa comode		Password
	rocteamea	log.comour		
	Edit outg	oing settings		
Block outgoi	ng spam:	\checkmark		
Autom	atic lock:	V		
User lock	timeout:	33	\$	
Maximum unlocks by	timeout:	2	\$	
Enable outgoi	ng limits:	\checkmark		
Limit	per hour.	30	\$	
Limit pe	er minute:	10	\$	
Valid sender address	required:			
Maximum number of recipients	s per day:	10	$\hat{\mathbf{v}}$	
Invalid recip	ient limit:	44	\$	
Maximum day	s to retry:	3		
Quarantine r	esponse:	Rejected		*
	Save	Cancel		

- Block outgoing spam/Automatic lock
 - Block outgoing spam Blocks all outgoing spam mails from the user.
 - Automatic lock If CASG detects spam or malicious mail from the user, it will automatically lock the user from sending mails for the period set in the 'User lock timeout' field.
- User lock timeout The time in minutes the user will be locked out from sending mails after CASG detects
 outgoing spam or malicious mails from the user.
- **Maximum unlocks by timeout** The number of times the locked out user will be unlocked for sending out mails. After reaching the maximum limit, the user will be locked out from sending any mails till it is unlocked by the administrator.
- Enable outgoing limits Allows you to activate / deactivate limits on outgoing mails.
 - Limit per hour The number of mails that can be sent per hour.
 - Limit per minute The number of mails that can be sent per minute.
- Valid sender address required If enabled, outgoing mails must have valid sender address.
- Maximum number of recipients per day Maximum number of recipients that a user can send mails per day.
- Invalid recipient limit: The number of invalid recipients that a user can send mails to.
- Maximum days to retry Maximum number of days CASG will retry to send queued outgoing mails after which they are bounced to the user.
- Quarantine response Determines the response that CASG will send to the SMTP server that delivered a

message in the event that the mail is identified as spam.

Note - If you have enabled quarantine functionality, then spam/malicious mail will be quarantined (and not delivered to the recipient) regardless of your choice here. These options merely determine what message CASG will send back to the SMTP mail server.

Options:

- Rejected Will inform the SMTP server that the email wasn't delivered to recipient. (By default is 'Rejected'.)
- Accepted The senders will not be notified if the outgoing mails are detected as spam. They will be blocked and not delivered to recipients.
- Click the 'Save' button.

Deshiboard / Domains / Domain dashiboard - docteamcase.comodo.od.ua / Out	ing users	
Outgoing users		Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🖋 Edit More actions 🗸		C Refresh
S Filters		
🔄 Username	^ Locked	
🗐 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		
🗐 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		
smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		

To delete an existing user

• Select the user you want to delete from the list and click the 'Delete' button.

Dashboard / Domeins / Domein dashboard - docteemcasq.comodo.od.ua / Outgoing users						
Outgoing users			🕜 Help			
+ Add Delete & Edit More actions V	Refresh					
Filters						
🔲 Username		Locked				
🔲 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua						
john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua						
👿 smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua						

Tip: You can select multiple users to delete by pressing and holding the Shift or Ctrl keys.



Click 'OK' to confirm.

To edit an existing user

You can reset password, modify the outgoing settings configured from the 'Add outgoing user' interface.

• Select the user that you want to edit from the list and click the 'Edit' button.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcase comodo.or	Lue / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	🕜 Help	
🕂 Add 🗴 Delete 🖉 Edit More actions 🗸	Refresh	
S Filters		
🔄 Username	^ Locked	
E bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		
III john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		
Smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		

Click the 'Edit outgoing settings' button.

Edit outgoing settings for smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
Username	Domain	Password	
smith	docteamcasg.comodo.		
	Edit outgoing settings		
	Save		

The 'Edit outgoing settings' will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Add outgoing user	×
Username Domain doctean	Password
Edit o	utgoing settings
Block outgoing spar	n: 🗷
Automatic loc	k: 🔽
User lock timeou	t: 33 🛟
Maximum unlocks by timeou	t: 2
Enable outgoing limit	s: 🔽
Limit per hou	ит. 30 🛟
Limit per minut	e: 10 🛟
Valid sender address require	d: 🔽
Maximum number of recipients per da	y: 10 🗘
Invalid recipient lim	it: 44 🛟
Maximum days to retr	у. З
Quarantine respons	e: Rejected V
Sav	Cancel

- Reset the password and / or make other changes as explained in the 'Add outgoing user' section.
- Click the 'Save' button to confirm your changes.

To manually lock outgoing user

Due to administrative or any other reason if you want to prevent a user from sending out mails, the Lock feature allows you to do so.

• Select the user that you want to lock, click 'More actions' and then click 'Lock'.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard	- docteamcaso, comodo. od. ua / Outgoin	g users	
Outgoing users			🕜 Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🖉 Edit	More actions 🐱		Refresh
S Filters	Lock		
🛅 Username	Unlock	^ Locked	
🔲 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.u	input ironi csv ne		
🔲 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.	Import from Incoming users		
✓ smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od	lua		

The selected user will be locked from sending mails.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasa.comodo.od.ua / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	Help
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🖉 Edit More actions 🗸	Refresh
S Fitters	
🔄 Username	Locked
Dob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🗐 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
☑ smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	manual

To manually unlock outgoing user

A user who has been locked either manually or automatically (see Edit outgoing settings) can be unlocked from this interface.

• Select the user that you want to unlock, click 'More actions' and then click 'Unlock'.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard	- docteamcasa comodo od ua / Outgoir	ng users		
Outgoing users				🕐 Help
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 🥒 Edit	More actions 🐱			Refresh
S Filters	Lock			
🕅 Username	Import from CSV file		Locked	
🔲 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.u				
🔲 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.	Import from Incoming users			
smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od	ua		manual	

The user will be unlocked and he/she can send mails.

To import outgoing users from CSV file

Administrators can import many users from a file to the outgoing users list at a time. The users should be saved in the format shown below as an example:

user1,domainname,password user2,domainname,password

To import outgoing users from a CSV file, click 'More actions' > 'Import from CSV file'

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboar	d - docteamcasa comodo od ua / Outgoing	users	
Outgoing users			Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🖉 Edit	More actions 🐱		Refresh
S Filters	Lock		
📄 Username	Index	^ Locked	-
bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od	Import from Incoming users		
smith@docteamcasg.comodo.c	d.ua	manual	

The Upload dialog will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Upload	×
Upload csv file. Each line should contain three columns: username,domain,password	
For example:	
testuser,testdomain,testpassword	
Upload	

• Click the 'Upload' button and navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The upload progress will be displayed...

Dashboard / Domeins / Domein dashboard - docteamcase comodo od ua / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	Help
Import is in process. Please wait	8
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🖉 Edit More actions 🗸	Refresh
Filters	
🔲 Username 🔶	Locked
Dob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🗐 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	manual

...and when completed, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcaso.comodo.od.ua / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	Help
Total lines processed 3	
Imported 3 user(s)	
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finished	
🕂 Add 🗊 Delete 🥒 Edit More actions 🗸	
Filters	
🗇 Username 🔶	Locked
E bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🔲 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
king@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
prince@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🔲 queen@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	

The administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Import from incoming users

Administrators can add all incoming users to the outgoing users list by importing. If there is an outgoing user with the same name, the import of incoming user will be skipped.

• To import outgoing users from incoming users, click 'More actions' > 'Import from Incoming users'

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard	I - docteamcaso, comodo od ua / Outgo	ng users	
Outgoing users			🕜 Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🖉 Edit	More actions 🗸		Refresh
Filters	Lock		
	Unlock		
Username	Import from CSV file	^ Locked	
bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.			<u>^</u>
🔲 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od	Import from Incoming users		
🗐 smith@docteamcasg.comodo.or	d.ua		~

The upload progress will be displayed...

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - doctearncase comodo.od.ue / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	Help
Import is in process. Please wait	8
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🖉 Edit More actions 💙	Refresh
Filters	
🔲 Username	Locked
bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	·
iohn@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	

...and when completed, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteannoasg.comodo.od.ua / Outgoing users	
Outgoing users	Help
Imported 5 user(s)	8
Total incoming users 7	0
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finished	8
+ Add Delete 🖉 Edit More actions 🗸	C Refresh
S Filters	
🗇 Username 🌱	Locked ~
bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🗖 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🖾 smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
Test@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
📰 user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🗐 user2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	

The administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

3.2.1.1.4.4 Email Management

From this interface an administrator can configure the maximum size of each email and select the file types of attachments to be allowed. An administrator can also choose to release or reject requests from users for releasing quarantined emails, adding senders to blacklist and whitelist.

COMODO Antispam Gateway	Q.,
Gol	Der
🕗 Dashboard	
💮 Domain dashboard	40
🖄 Incoming 💦 🔸	3:
🛆 Outgoing >	
🖻 Email management 🛛 🗸	21.
Email size restriction	- 16
Blocked extensions	
Released requests	
Blacklisted requests	
Whitelisted requests	
😥 Audit log 🔶 🔸	_
% Whitelist / Blacklist >	

Click the following links for more details:

- Email size restriction
- Blocked extensions
- Released requests
- Blacklisted requests
- Whitelisted requests

Email Size Restriction

In order to avoid your domain storage space getting used up quickly due to large size of emails, CASG allows you to set the maximum size of each email that are allowed. Administrators have a choice of restricting email size of up to 250 MB. If you require to set the size of email more than 250 MB, please contact your account manager at Comodo or please open a ticket at **support.comodo.com** or call 1.888.COMODO (2666.6361) and have your account number ready.

To set email size restriction

 Click the 'Email management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Email size restriction' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The 'Email restrictions' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteancase.comodo.od.ua / Email size restriction									
Email size restriction		Help							
Email size restriction (MB):	100								
	Save								

• Enter the maximum allowed size (up to 250 MB) of each email that you want to set in the 'Email size restriction' field.

If you enter a value more than 250 MB, an alert will be displayed to contact your account manager at Comodo and the email size will be automatically set as 250 MB.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteornossa.comodo.od.ua / Email size restriction										
Email size restriction	🕜 Help									
Incorrect capacity value. Value must be between 1 and 250. If you require more then 250Mb please call us.	×									
Email size restriction (MB): 250										
Save										

- If you want to set the size above 250 MB, please open a ticket at support.comodo.com or call 1.888.COMODO (2666.6361) and have your account number ready.
- Click 'Save' to confirm your changes.

Note: Incoming and outgoing emails with size more than the value set here will be quarantined.

Blocked Extensions

CASG has the ability to restrict certain type of files that are attached with emails from being delivered to the recipients. For example, a file attachment with .exe extension with malicious code has the potential to run automatically while being downloaded and infect the recipient's computer.

To add file extensions to be blocked

 Click the 'Email management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Blocked extensions' sub tab.

COMODO Antispam Gateway	Ę0
Gol	0
🕜 Dashboard	В
Domain dashboard	
🖄 Incoming 💦 🔸	
🖒 Outgoing 🔶	E
🖻 Email management 🗸 🗸	£
Email size restriction	E
Blocked extensions	
Released requests	
Blacklisted requests	E
Whitelisted requests	E
😥 Audit log 🔷 🔸	E
♥ Whitelist / Blacklist >	E

The 'Blocked extensions' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:



Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Blocked extensions

Blocked extensions

🕂 Add	Delete	🔊 Reset to default
Blocke	ed extension	
🔄 bat		
🔲 btm		
🔲 cmd		
🔲 com		
🖂 cpl		
🔳 dli		
in exe		
🔳 Ink		
🗐 msi		
🔲 piř		
🔲 prf		
🔲 reg		
🖾 scr		
Vbs		
🖾 url		

The list of default blocked extensions is displayed. You can sort the blocked extensions list alphabetically in ascending or descending order by clicking the 'Blocked extensions' title bar.

Click the 'Add' button to include another blocked extension

The 'Add blocked extension' will be displayed.

Add blocked extension	<
Domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
Blocked extensions 🔶	
Save Cancel	

• Enter the extension name to be blocked in the text box

You can add many extensions at a time by clicking the \clubsuit icon.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Comodo Antispam Gateway - Administrator Guide



Click the 'Save' button

The entered extensions will be added to the list.

• To delete an extension, select it from the list and click the 'Delete' button

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ug / Blocked extensions	
Blocked extensions	(2) Help
+ Add Delete S Reset to default	
Blocked extension	
🕼 chm	
🗖 ade	
I III 2 /2 ▶ ▶ [16-17/17]	

An alert will be displayed to confirm to delete the selected extensions.



The selected blocked extension will be deleted from the list and email attachment with this file extension will be allowed provided it passes the size restriction filter.

Click the 'Reset to default' button to restore default blocked extensions in CASG.

Released Requests

An administrator can choose to release or reject requests from users for releasing quarantined emails from their accounts. The release requests from users will be notified to all admins for that account via emails and will also be displayed in the interface. The users who requested for release of quarantined emails will also receive email notifications.

Note: User who have been assigned as 'Power User' can release quarantined mails without approval from the administrators. See the section '**Groups & Permissions**' and '**Managing Permissions**' for more details.

To open the released requests interface

 Click the 'Email management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Released requests' sub tab.



The 'Release requests' interface will be displayed:

Deshboard	/ Domains / Domain dashiboard - docteamcasu	conodo.od.uo / Released requests							
Relea	ased requests							6	Help
Sho	w message 🖌 Accept 🗶 Reject							0 F	Refresh
S Filte	irs								
🕑 User	Subject ^	From	То ^	cc •	Date (GMT +0) ~	Reason ^	Size	*	0
emo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		8
demo1	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	(se kelastagat ratiografiaranĝistros co.tr	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam uribil/sbl- mult.rbl.spamrl.cor	3.90 KB		8
14.4	1 /1 [1-2/2]						Per p	oge 1	5 🛩

The list of emails that users requested to release will be displayed. The list contains nine columns providing information about the requested user, subject, the sender, details of the recipients, details of recipients in CC list, the date they were sent, the reason they were quarantined and the size of the email. The last column indicates whether there is any attachment in the mails.

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using Filter option to search released requests

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Deshboard	/Domains /Dom	nain dashboard	- doctearncasa	comodo od us / Release	d requests									
Relea	sed rec	quests												🕜 Help
B Show	wmessage	🗸 Accept	🗶 Reject										Ð	Refresh
🗇 Filter	rs													
+ Sub	oject	✓ cor	ntains	•									Apply fit	ter
🔄 User	Subject			From	*	То	*	cc -	Date (GMT +0)	Reason	+	Size	*	8
	Fwd: Fw: Sen Emails/News	d UNLIMITED	Rs.2,500/mo.			demo1@d	octearric		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:4	3 whitelisted				0

You can add more filters by clicking	T	for narrowing down your search
Tou can add more milers by clicking	_	ior narrowing down your search.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dash	iboard - do	ctearncasa corried	io od un / Released requests								
Released reques	ts										🛛 Help
🕒 Show message 🗸 Ac	cept 🗙	Reject								0	Refresh
S Filters											
+ Bubject	contai	ns	•							opply filt	er
- Subject From	contai	ns	•								
Date Reason		- From	n		To ^	cc ·	Date (GMT +0)	Reason 🗸	Size		0
demot ZERO SETUP COST	TED Just Rs.2	TED ust Rs.2,500/mo. John Smith «fiatliena@gmail.com»			demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	sender	2.3 KB		8
Fix: Get Rs. 25 sssur	ed rechar	ge + Siri /									

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- **Subject::** Will execute a search of subject according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- From: Will execute a search of senders according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- To: Will execute a search of users according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Reason**: Will execute a search of words in the reason column according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- Contains: Displays all quarantined mails that contain the words entered in the text box
- Equals: Displays all quarantined mails that contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Equals: Displays all quarantined mails that do not contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Contains: Displays all quarantined emails that don't contain the words entered in the text box
- **Starts with:** Displays all quarantined emails that starts with the words entered in the text box
- Ends with: Displays all quarantined emails that ends with the words entered in the text box

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

- Date: Will execute a search of mail received dates according to the date selected in the calendar box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Size: Will execute a search of mails according to the size selected or entered in third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Date' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays the quarantined emails that have the same date as the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- **Greater than:** Displays the quarantined emails with dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

If 'Size' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with size less than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Greater than: Displays the quarantined emails with size greater than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the

🛃 Refresh

button to display all the release requested emails.

Note: To display all the release requested emails after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

Viewing Details of Release Requested Mails

The details such as user, subject, sender, recipient, date, reason and size of the mails requested for release can be viewed in two ways:

- In the same CASG window
- In a new CASG window

To view details of release requested mails in the same CASG window:

• In the released requests area, select the mail that you want to view and click the 'Show Message' button.

or

Click on the email link in the subject column that you want to view its details.

Deshboard	/Domains /Domain dashboard - doctearncaso	corrodo od un / Released requests								
Relea	ised requests							6	Юн	telp
G Sho	w message 🗸 Accept 🗶 Reject						[0	Refre	sh
S Filte	rs									
🗐 User	Subject *	From	To ^	cc ^	Date (GMT +0) ^	Reason 🗸	Size		0	
V demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «fiatiena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0	
emo1	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.		demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbi/sbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.com	3.98 KB		0	
14 4	1 /1 [1-2/2]						Per pa	ige 1	5	~

The details of the selected email will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

E-mail	×
Normal	All headers
🗸 Accept	🗙 Reject
Subject	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST
From	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>
То	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
cc	
Date (GMT	Wed Apr 09 06:40:43 GMT 2014
+0)	
Size	2.3 KB
Actions	3

To view the email headers, which contain the tracking information of the mail detailing the path it has crossed before reaching the recipient, click 'All headers' tab. The headers give full details of the sender, route, recipient, sent date, mail type and so on and enable you to check the authenticity of the mail.

Check the details of the mail and ascertain whether it is a spam mail or not. You can choose to either **accept** the mail or **reject** it. If the mail is accepted, it will be released to the user's inbox. If it is rejected, the email will be no longer in the released emails list. Please note that emails will continue to remain in the **Quarantined** list irrespective of the action taken.

To view details of release requested mails in a new CASG window:

• In the released requests area, select the mail that you want to view, right-click on the email link in the subject column and select to open in a new tab or new window.

Deshboard	/Domains /Domain	dashboard - doctearncasa	comodo oci un / R	leleased requests							
Relea	ised requ	iests								ę	🕽 Help
) Sho	w message 🖌	Accept 🗶 Reject							6	C F	Refresh
S Filte	rs										
🔲 User	Subject		From		То	cc -	Date (GMT +0)	Reason 🖕	Size	•	0
⊘ demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send U Emails/Newslet ZERO SETUP C	INLIMITED	Inite Desition	atliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 8:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0
E demo1	Fw: Get Rs. 25 a chance to win ar	Open Link in New Erival Bookmark This Link Save Link As	te Window	an an@yahoo.co.in>	demo1@docteamo demo2@docteamo		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbi/sbi- multi.rbi.spamrl.cor	3.98 KB		0
14 4	1 /1 >	Copy Link Location							Per pag	19	5 ¥
		Inspect Element (Q)									

The details of the selected mail will be displayed in a new CASG window.

Alberta / Contrat I deal Modern - Muchael Schuld Andrean Contrat / Contrat Contrat	
	Help
All headers	
X Reject	
Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	
John Smith <fatilena@gmail.com></fatilena@gmail.com>	
demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
Wed Apr 09 06:40:43 GMT 2014	
2.3 KB	
3	
	All headers

To accept the release request from users

•

After viewing the details and ensuring that the selected email is not a spam you can choose to release the mail to the recipient.

Select the mail that you want to release and click the 'Accept' button.

Deshboard	/ Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasu	conodo.od.us / Released requests								
Relea	ised requests								0 н	leip
Sho	w message 📿 Accept 🗶 Reject							0	Refre	sh
S Filte	rs									
🔳 User	Subject *	From *	To ~	сс ^	Date (GMT +0)	Reason 🗸	Size		0	
₹ demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «fiatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		8	
demo1	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	Dir Arbahagan Harbughtibarangpeloss co.br	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam uriblisbi- multirbi.spamri.cor	3.98 KB		0	
14 4	1 /1 [1-2/2]						Per	page	15	~

An alert will be displayed to confirm the release of selected email to the requested user.

Accept email	×
Are you sure you want to email?	o accept the selected
ок	Cancel

• Click 'OK' to confirm the release.

The email will be released to the user and the mail will no longer be in the released mail list. However, it will continue to remain in the **Quarantined** list.

To reject the release request from users

•

After viewing the details of the email and if not satisfied with its authenticity you can choose to reject the request from the user.

Select the mail that you want to reject and click the 'Reject' button.

Dashboard	/Domains /Domain dashiboard - docteancaso	comodo od un / Released requests								
Relea	ised requests							1	0.	leip
D Sho	w message 🖌 Accept 🗶 Reject)						0	Refre	sh
S Filte	rs									
🖹 User	Subject *	From	To -	сс -	Date (GMT +0) -	Reason 🗸	Size	-	0	
I demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 8:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0	
demo1	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	for Adaptages Hertugetherengiphocococie	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbi/sbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.cor	3.98 KB		0	
14.4	1 /1 [1-2/2]						Per p	page	15	*

An alert will be displayed to confirm the rejection of selected email.





• Click 'OK' to confirm the rejection.

The email will not be released to the user and the mail will no longer be in the released mail list. However, it will continue to remain in the **Quarantined** list.

Blacklisted Requests

CASG allow users to send requests to their email account administrators to add senders to blacklist. Administrators in addition to receiving emails for these requests also can view the list of such requests in 'Blacklisted requests' section of the administrator interface under 'Email management' section. The senders added to balcklist on users' request will be applicable for the requested users only. Mails from these blacklisted senders to the requested users will be rejected by CASG even though these blacklisted senders may be in general sender whitelist. Refer to the sections **Sender Whitelist** and **Blacklist Senders Per User** for more details.

To open the blacklisted requests interface

 Click the 'Email management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Blacklisted requests' sub tab.



The 'Blacklisted requests' interface will be displayed:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard	/Domains /Domain dashboard - docteamcaso	comodo oct un / Blacklisted requests							
Black	listed requests							(Help
🕒 Shơ	w message 🖌 Accept 🗶 Reject							0	Refresh
🕑 Filte	rs								
🗐 User	Subject ^	From	То	cc ^	Date (GMT +0) ^	Reason *	Size	-	0
E demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 8:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0
E demo1	Fw. Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	Con Andread August Hanning and Constanting and Austic and America	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbVsbl- multLrbl.spamrl.cor	3.98 KB		0
demo1	Fw. Register and Get Rs. 5000 to Shop Now! Introducing Pepperfry.com - India's L	Ciri Antoshagan Hantosprishanan @eatros.co.ini	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:32:36 AM	spam uriblim- uri.rbi.spamri.com	3.05 KB		0
E demot	Fw: We have free samples for you, now by before you buy @your doorsteps!	Con Antonghagan Handing Priferencing Self-101 (11) Int	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc	-	Apr 7, 2014 8:52:31 AM	spam urlblim- url.rbl.spamrl.com	3.02 KB		0
emo1	test spam email 1	Express regari, Spiteling, and carr	demo1@docteamc		Apr 2, 2014 2:26:40 PM	spam External pattern match (SanesecurityJunk.	8.16 KB		8
14.4	1 /1 > > [1-5/5]						Per p	age 1	6 ¥

The list of emails that users requested for adding the senders to blacklist will be displayed. The list contains nine columns providing information about the requested user, subject, the sender, details of the recipients, details of recipients in CC list, the date they were sent, the reason they were quarantined and the size of the email. The last column indicates whether there is any attachment in the mails.

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using Filter option to search blacklisted requests

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Deshboard	/Domains / Dom	nain dashboard	- docteancaso	comodo.od.ua / Blacklisted requests									
Black	listed re	quests	;									(Help
Sho	w message	🖌 Accept	🗶 Reject									Ð	Refresh
🗇 Filte	irs												
+ Sut	bject	♥ 00	ontains	v								Apply fit	er
🔄 User	Subject		*	From	*	To		сс	Date (GMT +0) ^	Reason	Size	٨	8
2 demo 1	Fwd: Fw: Sen Emails/News	d UNLIMITED) Ris.2,500/mo.			demo1@d	locteamo		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43	whiteRsted			8

	You	can	add	more	filters	by	clicking	Т	for narrow
--	-----	-----	-----	------	---------	----	----------	---	------------

for narrowing down your search.

Dashboard / Dominis / Comini, dashboard - docteancasa, comodo.od.ua / Blacklated requests												
Bla	Blacklisted requests											
	Show message	🗸 Accep	t 🗶 R	eject						[Refresh	
0	S Filters											
+ Subject v contains v									App	ply filter		
	Subject From To			+	From ^	To ^	cc *	Date (GMT +0) ^	Reason *	Size	- ĝ	
itti demo	Date Reason Size (KB)	T	ED st Rs.2,50)ûime.	John Smith <fiatiena@gmail.com></fiatiena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteams: demo2@docteams:		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB	Ø	

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- **Subject::** Will execute a search of subject according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- From: Will execute a search of senders according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- To: Will execute a search of users according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Reason**: Will execute a search of words in the reason column according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- Contains: Displays all quarantined mails that contain the words entered in the text box
- Equals: Displays all quarantined mails that contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Equals: Displays all quarantined mails that do not contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Contains: Displays all quarantined emails that don't contain the words entered in the text box
- · Starts with: Displays all quarantined emails that starts with the words entered in the text box
- Ends with: Displays all quarantined emails that ends with the words entered in the text box

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

- Date: Will execute a search of mail received dates according to the date selected in the calendar box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Size: Will execute a search of mails according to the size selected or entered in third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Date' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays the quarantined emails that have the same date as the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Greater than: Displays the quarantined emails with dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

If 'Size' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with size less than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Greater than: Displays the quarantined emails with size greater than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the

button to display all the blacklisted requests emails.

Note: To display all the blacklisted requests mails after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

Viewing Details of Blacklisted Requests

The details such as user, subject, sender, recipient, date, reason and size of the mails requested for blacklisting can be viewed in two ways:



- In the same CASG window
- In a new CASG window

To view details of blacklisted requests in the same CASG window:

- In the blacklisted requests area, select the mail that you want to view and click the 'Show Message' button.
- or
- Click on the email link in the subject column that you want to view its details.

Dashboard	/ Domains / Domain deshiboard - docteranceso	comosio oci un / Biackilisted requests							
Black	listed requests								🕜 Help
(Sho	w message 🗸 Accept 🗙 Reject							2	Refresh
🕑 Filte	rs								
🔄 User	Subject -	From	To ~	cc -	Date (GMT +0) ^	Reason *	Size		0
I⊉ demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «fiatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		Ø
demot	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	De Arbabagan ractogridherergistes os tr	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbl/sbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.com	3.98 KB		0
	Fw: Register and Get Rs. 5000 to Shop Now! Introducing Pepperthycom - India's								

The details of the selected email will be displayed.

E-mail	X
Normal	All headers
🗸 Accept	X Reject
Subject	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST
From	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>
То	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
cc	
Date (GMT +0)	Wed Apr 09 06:40:43 GMT 2014
Size	2.3 KB
Actions	

To view the email headers, which contain the tracking information of the mail detailing the path it has crossed before reaching the recipient, click 'All headers' tab. The headers give full details of the sender, route, recipient, sent date, mail type and so on and enable you to check the authenticity of the mail.

Check the details of the mail and ascertain whether it is a spam mail or not. You can choose to either **accept** the mail or **reject** it for blacklisting the sender. If the request is accepted, the sender will be added to '**Blacklist Senders Per User**'. If it is rejected, the email will be no longer in the blacklisted requests emails list. Please note that emails will continue to remain in the **Quarantined** list irrespective of the action taken.

To view details of blacklisted requests in a new CASG window:

 In the blacklisted requests area, select the mail that you want to view and click the 'Show message in new window' button or right-click and select to open in a new tab or new window.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Deshboard	/Domains /Dom	ain dashiboard - doctearncaso	conodo od ua / Blac	klisted requests							
Black	listed re	quests								6	Help
Sho	w message	🖌 Accept 🗙 Reject								0 F	Refresh
S Filte	rs										
🔄 User	Subject		From		To •	cc ^	Date (GMT +0)	Reason *	Size	- 0	
☑ demo1	Fwd: Fw: Seni Emails/News ZERO SETUR	t UNLIMITED letter in Just Rs.2,500/mo.	John Smith «fati	iena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteam demo2@docteam	51	Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0
E demo1	Fw: Get Rs. 2 chance to wir	Open Link in New Window Open Link in New Private 1	Window	Quites as in-	demo1@docteam demo2@docteam		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam uribl/sbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.co	3.98 KB		0
emo1	Fw: Register Nowl Introduc	Save Link As Copy Link Locgtion		Quartum 12.75*	demo1@docteam demo2@docteam	1	Apr 9, 2014 4:32:36 AM	spam uribl/im-	3.05 KB		8
El demo1	Pw: We have try before you	Add To Top Sites	•		demo1@docteam demo2@docteam		Apr 7, 2014 8:52:31 AM	spam urblim- urt fbl spamit.com	3.02 KB		0
		The New Tab	-								

The details of the selected mail will be displayed in a new CASG window.

E-mail	Help
Normal All headers	
Accept 🗶 Reject	
Subject Fwd: Fw: Send UNUMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs 2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	
From John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»	
To demot@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
00	
Date (GMT +0) Wed Apr 09 06:40:43 GMT 2014	
Size 2.3 KB	
Actions 🚾	

To accept the blacklist request from users

After viewing the details, you can choose to accept the request from user to add the sender to blacklist senders per user list.

• Select the mail that you want to add the sender to blacklist and click the 'Accept' button.

Dashboard	/Domains /Domain dashboard - docteamcaso	comodo.od.us / Blacklisted requests									
Blacklisted requests											
🕒 Sho	w message 📿 Accept 🗶 Reject							0	Refresh		
S Filte	rs										
🛅 User	Subject ^	From	To	cc *	Date (GMT +0) *	Reason *	Size		9		
Ø demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteam demo2@docteam	61 61	Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0		
demo1	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	for Askadogan. Nethophilteren gentus some	demo1@docteam demo2@docteam	ei 61	Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam uribil/sbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.co	3.90 KB		8		
	Fw: Register and Oct Rs. 5000 to Shop three lines of Previous Terrary Contents										

An alert will be displayed to confirm adding the sender to 'Blacklist Senders Per User'.



Accept email	x
Are you sure you want to accept the selected email?	
OK Cancel	

• Click 'OK' to confirm the acceptance.

The sender of the email will be added to 'Blacklist senders per user. See the section 'Blacklist Senders Per User' for more details.

To reject the blacklist request from users

After viewing the details of the email, you can choose to reject the request from the user.

• Select the mail that you want to reject and click the 'Reject' button.

Dashboar	1 / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteancaso	comodo.od.us / Blacklisted requests							
Black	listed requests								Help
🕒 Sho	w message 🗸 Accept 🗶 Reject)						Ð	Refresh
S Filte	irs								
🔄 User	Subject *	From *	То ^	cc *	Date (GMT +0)	Reason * :	Size	- 0	
I demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «fiatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteam demo2@docteam	c: c:	Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		Ø
demot	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	Con Antonia agues Frantis gantifica e an diporte e con me	demo1@docteam demo2@docteam	ei ci	Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam uribilisbi- multi.rbi spamri.co	3.96 KB		8
	Fw: Register and Oct Rs. 5000 to Shop Movements and Perspective remains								

An alert will be displayed to confirm the rejection of selected email.



• Click 'OK' to confirm the rejection.

The sender will not be added to blacklist and the selected email will no longer be in the blacklisted emails list.

Whitelisted Requests

CASG allows users to send requests to their email account administrators to add senders to whitelist from their Quarantine interface. Administrators in addition to receiving emails for these requests also can view the list of such requests in 'Whitelisted requests' section of the administrator interface under 'Email management' section. The senders added to whiltelist on users' request will be applicable for the requested users only. Mails from these whitelisted senders to the requested users will be allowed by CASG without passing through the antispam engine, that is, emails from a whitelist Senders Per User for more details.

To open the whitelisted requests interface

 Click the 'Email management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Whiltelisted requests' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Whitelisted requests' interface will be displayed:

Dashboard	/Domains /Do	nain dashboard	i - doctearroasq	conodo.od.us /Vehitelisted requests									
White	elisted r	equest	5									0	Help
Sho	w message	🗸 Accept	🗶 Reject								Ð	Ref	resh
🕑 Filte	rs												
🔄 User	Subject			From	-	To ^	cc ·	Date (GMT +0)	Reason *	Size		8	
emo1	Fwd: Fw: Ser Emails/New ZERO SETU	nd UNLIMITED sletter in Just P COST) Rs.2,500/mo.	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»	(demo1@docteamc; demo2@docteamc;		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0	
emo1	Fw: Get Rs. 2 chance to wi	25 assured re n an IPOD.	charge +	lan kelantragan Haribugat Daran Barten, cu, ter		demo1@docteamc: demo2@docteamc:		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbVsbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.com	3.98 KB		0	
demo2 test sparn email 2		Expressio responsibilitation @consider.com		demo2@docteamc;		Apr 2, 2014 2:27:00 PM	spam External pattern match (SanesecurityJunik	8.18 KB		0			
14.4	1	⊨ ⊨I = I	1-3/3]								Per page	15	~

The list of emails that users requested for adding the senders to whitelist will be displayed. The list contains nine columns providing information about the requested user, subject, the sender, details of the recipients, details of recipients in the CC list, the date they were sent, the reason they were quarantined and the size of the email. The last column indicates whether there is any attachment in the mails.

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using Filter option to search whitelisted requests

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Deshboard	/Domains /Domain dat	shiboard - doctearncasa d	conodo.od.us /Whitelisted requests									
White	elisted requ	ests										Help
🕒 Sho	w message 🗸 A	ccept 🗶 Reject									Ð	Refresh
🗇 Filte	15											
+ Sut	bject	✓ contains	•	5							Apply fil	ter
🗐 User	Subject	-	From		To ~	сс	Date (GMT +0)	Reason	*	Size	•	0
demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNL Emails/Newsletter I ZERO SETUR COS	JMITED In Just Rs.2,500/mo. T	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»		demo1@docteamo demo2@docteamo		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender		2.3 KB		8
You ca	n add more f	ilters by clicki	ng for narrowing	dc	own your sea	rch.						
White	elisted requ	ests									(Help
Sho	w message 🖌 🖌	ccept 💥 Reject									3	Refresh
🕲 Filte	rs											
+ But - Su Fri	oject Ibject orm	contains contains	• •								Apply fit	er
	rte		From	^	To ^	сс	Date (GMT +0)	Reason	•	Size	•	9
demo1	ze (KB) Emailsarvewsretter n ZERO SETUP COST	TED moust Rs.2,500/mo. r	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»		demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender		2.3 KB		8

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- **Subject:** Will execute a search of subject according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- From: Will execute a search of senders according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- To: Will execute a search of users according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Reason**: Will execute a search of words in the reason column according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- **Contains:** Displays all quarantined mails that contain the words entered in the text box
- Equals: Displays all guarantined mails that contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Equals: Displays all quarantined mails that do not contain only the words entered in the text box
- **Not Contains:** Displays all guarantined emails that don't contain the words entered in the text box
- Starts with: Displays all quarantined emails that starts with the words entered in the text box
- Ends with: Displays all guarantined emails that ends with the words entered in the text box

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

- Date: Will execute a search of mail received dates according to the date selected in the calendar box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Size: Will execute a search of mails according to the size selected or entered in third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Date' is selected, the following conditions are available:

• Equals: Displays the quarantined emails that have the same date as the selected date in the third box from the

calendar

- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Greater than: Displays the quarantined emails with dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

If 'Size' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Less than: Displays the quarantined emails with size less than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Greater than: Displays the quarantined emails with size greater than the selected or entered size in the third box
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.



Refresh button to display all the whitelisted requests emails.

Note: To display all the whitelisted requests after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

Viewing Details of Whitelisted Requests

The details such as user, subject, sender, recipient, date, reason and size of the mails requested for whitelisting can be viewed in two ways:

- In the same CASG window
- In a new CASG window

To view details of whitelisted requests in the same CASG window:

• In the whitelisted requests area, select the mail that you want to view and click the 'Show Message' button.

or

Click on the email link in the subject column that you want to view its details.

Deshboard	/Domains /Domain dashboard - doctearncash	compdo.od.ua /Whitelisted requests							
White	listed requests							(🗿 неір
B Sho	w message 🗸 Accept 🗶 Reject						1	Ð	Refresh
S Filte	ITS								
🔄 User	Subject -	From	To ~	cc -	Date (GMT +0) *	Reason *	Size		0
₹ demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «fiatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 8:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		8
demo1	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	for Nitedages Verlagelik wan globas sa ter	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbl/sbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.cor	3.98 KB		0
demo2	test spam email 2	Engenerite respects/spinarile@consile.com	demo2@docteamc		Apr 2, 2014 2:27:00 PM	spam External pattern match (SanesecurityJunk	0.10 KĐ		8
14 4	1 /1 > > - [1+3/3]						Per pi	ige [1	5 🗸

The details of the selected email will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

E-mail	X
Normal	All headers
🗸 Accept	🗙 Reject
Subject	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST
From	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>
То	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
cc	
Date (GMT +0)	Wed Apr 09 06:40:43 GMT 2014
Size	2.3 KB
Actions	

To view the email headers, which contain the tracking information of the mail detailing the path it has crossed before reaching the recipient, click 'All headers' tab. The headers give full details of the sender, route, recipient, sent date, mail type and so on and enable you to check the authenticity of the mail.

Check the details of the mail and ascertain whether it is a spam mail or not. You can choose to either accept the mail or reject it for whitelisting the sender. If the request is accepted, the sender will be added to 'Whitelist sender per user'. If it is rejected, the email will be no longer in the whitelisted requests list. Please note that emails will continue to remain in the Quarantined list irrespective of the action taken.

To view details of whitelisted requests in new CASG window:

 In the whitelisted requests area, select the mail that you want to view and click the 'Show message in new window' button or right-click and select to open in a new tab or new window.

White	listed	l requests							6	Help
D Sho	w messag	e 🗸 Accept 🗶 Reject						(C P	Refresh
🕑 Filte	rs									
🔲 User	Subject		From	To *	cc -	Date (GMT +0)	Reason *	Size	•	0
✓ termo1	Fwd: Fwc Emails/N ZERO SE	Send LINI IMITED Open Link in New Jab Open Link in New Window Open Link in New Private Windo	mith «fiatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamo demo2@docteamo		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0
E lemo1	Fw: Get F chance to	Bookmark This Link Save Link As Copy Link Locgtion	terbapet probaser godina on te-	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam uribil/sbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.cor	3.98 KB		0
temo2	test spar	Inspect Element (Q) CAdd To Top Sites	entes Schapinarito di consta com-	demo2@docteamc		Apr 2, 2014 2:27:00 PM	spam Eidemal pattern match	8.18 KB		0
	1	Tile Tab Tile New Tab Tile Duplicate Tab	5 5 5				(SanesecuntyJunk	Per pa	ge 1	5 4

The details of the selected mail will be displayed in a new CASG window.



Dashboard / 0	ashiboard (Domains / Domain: dashiboard - docteamcasa.comodo.ed.ua; //Mntelisted requests / E-mail									
E-mail	He	p								
Normal	All headers									
🗸 Accept	X Reject									
Subject	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST									
From	John Smith «fiatliena@gmail.com»									
То	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua									
CC										
Date (GMT +0)	Wed Apr 09 06:40:43 GMT 2014									
Size	2.3 KB									
Actions										

To accept the whitelist request from users

After viewing the details, you can choose to accept the request from user to add the sender to whitelist senders per user list.

• Select the mail that you want to add the sender to whitelist and click the 'Accept' button.

Dashboard	/ Domains / Domain dashiboard - docteamcaso	conodo od un /Whitelisted requests							
Whitelisted requests								🕜 Help	
🖻 Show message 📿 Accept 🗶 Reject								Refresh	
🕑 Filte	irs								
🔄 User	Subject ^	From	To ^	cc -	Date (GMT +0)	Reason *	Size		0
₩ demo1	Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		0
emot	Fw: Oet Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	ler Alladaga Vallagi dharan Quidoss os te-	demo1@docteamo demo2@docteamo		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbVsbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.cor	3.98 KB		0
demo2	test spam email 2	Expression respects to provide community of the	demo2@docteamc		Apr 2, 2014 2:27:00 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.	8.18 KB		8
14 4	1 /1 [1-3/3]						Per	page 1	15 ~

An alert will be displayed to confirm adding the sender to 'Whitelist sender per user'.



• Click 'OK' to confirm the acceptance.

The sender of the email will be added to 'Whitelist sender per user'. See the section 'Whitelist Sender Per User' for more details.

To reject the whitelist request from users

After viewing the details of the email, you can choose to reject the request from the user.

• Select the mail that you want to reject and click the 'Reject' button.
Dashboard	/Domains /Domain dashiboard - docteamcasa	canodo ad un //Whitelisted requests							
White	elisted requests							6	🛛 Help
Sho	w message 🗸 Accept 🗶 Reject	>						Ð	Refresh
🕑 Filte	rs								
🔄 User	Subject ^	From	To ^	cc -	Date (GMT +0)	Reason	Size		8
₹ demo1	Fwd: Fw. Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs.2,500/mo. ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith «flatliena@gmail.com»	demo1@docteamc demo2@docteamc		Apr 9, 2014 6:40:43 AM	whitelisted sender	2.3 KB		8
emot	Fw: Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	lei Albabapa Helogi dharei Qoli su u te	demo1@docteamt: demo2@docteamt:		Apr 9, 2014 4:33:22 AM	spam urlbVsbl- multi.rbl.spamrl.cor	3.98 KB		0
demo2	test spam email 2	Espinanta respirata la provincija amada com-	demo2@docteamc		Apr 2, 2014 2:27:00 PM	spam External pattern match (Sanesecurity.Junk.	8.18 KB		0
14 4	1 /1 [1-3/3]						Per p	ege 1	5 🗸

An alert will be displayed to confirm the rejection of user's request.

Reject email			X
Are you s email?	ure you wan	t to reject the selected	
	ок	Cancel	

• Click 'OK' to confirm the rejection.

The sender will not be added to whitelist and the selected email will no longer be in the whitelisted requests list.

3.2.1.1.4.5 Domain Audit Log

CASG keeps a record of actions initiated by users and administrators for a selected domain. The Audit Log area allow administrators with appropriate privileges to configure and view these log reports. CASG also keeps a consolidated log for all domains belonging to an account. To know more about consolidated log for all domains, refer to the section **Audit Log** for more details. This section explains about audit log for a selected domain.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

COMODO Antispam Gateway	Quarantine: 8 Release requests: 0 Whitelist requests: 2 Blacklist requests: 1
	Dashteoird / Domains / Comain dashteoird - docteancasa comodo.od.ua / Audit configuration
🕗 Dashboard	Audit configuration
🜐 Domain dashboard	A substantial data set and
🕭 Incoming	Quarantined item released
👍 Outgoing	Create audit log entry
Email management	Send notification email
	Sender whitelist updated
l Audit log	Create audit log entry
Configuration	Send notification email
	Sandar blad diet undated
🐕 Whitelist / Blacklist	Selider prackrist dhosted
🖆 Account management	Create audit log entry
	Send notification email
	Notification recipients
	Jonngdocteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
	Ban

Click the following links for more details.

- Audit Log Configuration
- View Domain Log

Audit Log Configuration

CASG keeps a record of all actions initiated by administrators and users. However, some of the actions can be configured not be recorded such as releasing quarantined items, updating sender whitelist and blacklist senders per user. The screen also allows administrators to add recipients to whom the notifications will be sent.

To configure audit log

• Click the 'Audit log' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Configuration' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The Audit Configuration screen will be displayed:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Audit configuration					
Audit configuration		Help			
Quarantined item released					
	Create audit log entry Send notification email				
Sender whitelist updated					
	Create audit log entry Send notification email				
Sender blacklist updated					
	Create audit log entry Send notification email				
Notification recipients					
	Save				



• Quarantined item released

- Create audit log entry If enabled, CASG records the release of quarantined mails.
- Send notification email If enabled, notification mails for quarantined mails release will be sent to recipients added in the 'Notification recipient's' box.
- Sender whitelist updated
 - · Create audit log entry If enabled, CASG records any updates to Whitelist senders per user interface
 - Send notification email If enabled, notification mails for updates to Whitelist senders per user interface will be sent to recipients added in the 'Notification recipient's' box.
- Sender blacklist updated
 - Create audit log entry If enabled, CASG records any updates to Blacklist senders per user interface.
 - Send notification email If enabled, notification mails for updates to Blacklist senders per user interface will be sent to recipients added in the 'Notification recipient's' box.
- Notification recipients Enter the email addresses of the persons to whom the email notifications for the above mentioned actions will be sent. Please note that any email addresses of the recipient's can be entered here.

View Domain Log

The log screen in CASG allows administrators with appropriate privileges to view the logs of the selected domain.

To view the audit log of the selected domain

• Click the 'Audit log' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Log' sub tab.



The Audit log screen will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Desitioned / Domains / Domain de	ashboard - do	ctearncasa conodo od ua / A	udit log			
Audit log					Ø He	elp
Export to CSV by filter					C Refres	sh
S Filters						
Date (GMT +0)	Role	* Login *	Operation key *	Operation description	Details	-
2014-04-13 09:16:42	admin	john@docteamcas	UNWHITELIST_SE	Remove sender from the whitelist	goodguyi@heaven.com	
2014-04-13 08:57:07	admin	john@docteamcas	RELEASE_EMAIL_	Release quarantined message	Recipients: demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender ; Date: Mon Apr 07.08:52:31.GMT 2014; Subject: P We have free samples for you, now by before you buy @ your doorsteps!	w
2014-04-13 08:53:57	admin	john@docteamcas	WHITELIST_SEND	Whitelist sender	goodguy@heaven.com	
2014-04-13 08:52:28	admin	john@docteamcas	UNWHITELIST_SE	Remove sender from the whitelist	someone@example.com	
2014-04-13 08:50:23	admin	john@docteamcas	RELEASE_EMAIL_	Release quarantined message	Recipients: demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender. ; Date: Mon Apr 07 08:52:31 GMT 2014; Subject: Fr We have free samples for you, now by before you buy @ your doorsteps!	w
2014-04-13 08:45:07	admin	john@docteamcas	BLACKLIST_SEND	Blacklist sender	devil@hell.com	
2014-04-13 08:35:36	admin	john@docteamcas	WHITELIST_SEND	Whitelist sender	someone@example.com	
2014-04-13 08:27:36	user	demo1	USER_BLACKLIST	Request blacidist sender for user	Recipients: demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender. John Smith <fatilena@gmail.com Subject Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs 2,500/mo. ZER SETUP COST; Wed Apr 09.06:40:43 GMT 2014</fatilena@gmail.com 	n>; 0
2014-04-13 08:25:37	admin	john@docteamcas	REJECT_WHITELS	Reject request whitelist sender for user	Recipients: demo1@doctearncasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@doctearncasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender: John Smith «flatiena@gmail.com Subject: Fwd: Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs 2,500/mo. ZER BETUP COST; 2014-04-09.05:40:43.0	n×; :0

Sorting the Entries

•

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column. The sorting option is not available for 'Operation description' column.

Using Filter options to search particular event(s)

Click anywhere on the 'Filters' tab to open the filters area.

Audit log								🕜 Help
📩 Export to CSV by fills	ər							Refresh
O Filters								
+ Date		← equals		×				Apply filter
Date (GMT +0)		Role	- Login	*	Operation key	Operation description	Details	
2014-04-13 09:16:42		admin	johné	docteamcas	UNWHITELIST_SE	Remove sender from the whitelist	goodguy@heaven.com	

You can add more filters by clicking 🕈 for narrowing down your search.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Desht	oard / <u>Domains</u> / <u>Domain da</u>	shbo	and - doctean	ncasa como	do od us (A	vudit log			
Auc	lit log								🕑 Help
۵	Export to CSV by filter								Refresh
0	filters								
+	Diate	*	equals		~	(iii)			Apply filter
-	Date								
Date	Role		le -	Login		Operation key 🗠	Operation description	Details	~
2014	Login Operation description Details		min	john@d	octeamicas	UNWHITELIST_SE	Remove sender from the whitelist	goodguy@heaven.com	

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- Login: Will execute a search of log entries according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Details: Will execute a search of log entries according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- Contains: Displays all log entries that contain the words entered in the text box
- Equals: Displays all log entries that contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Equals: Displays all log entries that do not contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Contains: Displays all log entries that don't contain the words entered in the text box
- Starts with: Displays all log entries that starts with the words entered in the text box
- Ends with: Displays all log entries that ends with the words entered in the text box

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

- Date: Will execute a search of log entries according to the date selected in the calendar box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Role: Will execute a search of log entries according to the role selected in the third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Operative description:** Will execute a search of log entries according to the action selected in the third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Date' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays the log entries that have the same date as the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Less than: Displays the log entries with dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Greater than: Displays the log entries with dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

If 'Role' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all log entries that is equal to the role selected in column 3.
- Not Equals: Displays all log entries that except the role selected in column 3.

If 'Operative description' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all log entries that is equal to the event selected in column 3.
- Not Equals: Displays all log entries that except the event selected in column 3.
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.



Click the

•

ŧ

Refresh

button to display all the entries.

Note: To display all the log entries after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

The following table provides the details of actions initiated by user/administrator and shown under Operation Key and Operation Description columns in the log report:

S.No.	Operation Key	Operation Description
1	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_QUARANTINE_BY_FILTER	Delete quarantined messages by filter
2	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_QUARANTINE	Delete quarantined message
3	RELEASE_EMAIL_FROM_QUARANTINE	Release quarantined message
4	WHITELIST_RECIPIENT	Whitelist recipient
5	BLACKLIST_RECIPIENT	Blacklist recipient
6	UNWHITELIST_RECIPIENT	Remove recipient from the whitelist
7	UNBLACKLIST_RECIPIENT	Remove recipient from the blacklist
8	WHITELIST_SENDER	Whitelist sender
9	BLACKLIST_SENDER	Blacklist sender
10	UNWHITELIST_SENDER	Remove sender from the whitelist
11	UNBLACKLIST_SENDER	Remove sender from the blacklist
12	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_WHITELISTED_SENDERS	Reset senders whitelist
13	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_WHITELISTED_RECIPIENTS	Reset recipients whitelist
14	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_BLACKLISTED_SENDERS	Reset senders blacklist
15	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_BLACKLISTED_RECIPIENTS	Reset recipients blacklist
16	WHITELIST_SENDER_DOMAIN	Whitelist all senders of the domain
17	WHITELIST_RECIPIENT_DOMAIN	Whitelist all recipients of the domain
18	BLACKLIST_SENDER_DOMAIN	Blacklist all senders of the domain
19	BLACKLIST_RECIPIENT_DOMAIN	Blacklist all recipients of the domain
20	USER_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Request whitelist sender for user
21	USER_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Request blacklist sender for user
22	USER_RELEASE_REQUEST	Release request
23	USER_CANCEL_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Cancel request whitelist sender for user
24	USER_CANCEL_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Cancel request blacklist sender for user
25	USER_CANCEL_RELEASE_REQUEST	Cancel release request



26	ACCEPT_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Accept request whitelist sender for user
27	ACCEPT_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Accept request blacklist sender for user
28	ACCEPT_RELEASE_REQUEST	Accept release request
29	REJECT_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Reject request whitelist sender for user
30	REJECT_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Reject request blacklist sender for user
31	REJECT_RELEASE_REQUEST	Reject release request
32	SPAM_DETECTION_SETTINGS	Update spam detection settings
33	SPAM_DETECTION_SETTINGS_RESET_TO_DEFAULT	Reset spam detection settings
34	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_ARCHIVE_BY_FILTER	Delete archived messages by filter
35	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_ARCHIVE	Delete archived message
36	RESEND_EMAIL_FROM_ARCHIVE	Resend archived message
37	REPORTS_AS_SPAM	Reports archived message as a SPAM
38	QUARANTINE_EMAIL	Quarantine message
39	ACCEPT_AND_ARCHIVE_EMAIL	Accept and archive message
40	MARK_EMAIL_AS_SPAM	Mark message as spam
41	ACCEPT_EMAIL	Accept message
42	WHITELIST_USER_SENDER	Whitelist sender for user
43	BLACKLIST_USER_SENDER	Blacklist sender for user
44	UNWHITELIST_USER_SENDER	Remove sender from the user whitelist
45	UNBLACKLIST_USER_SENDER	Remove sender from the user blacklist
46	QUARANTINE_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_UPDATE	Quarantine report subscription update
47	QUARANTINE_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_RESET_TO_ DEFAULT	Quarantine report subscription reset to default
48	DOMAIN_STATISTICS_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_UPD ATE	Domain report subscription update
49	DOMAIN_STATISTICS_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_RES ET_TO_DEFAULT	Domain report subscription reset to default
50	DOMAIN_ADD	Add domain
51	DOMAIN_DELETE	Remove domain
52	ADMIN_ADD	Add admin
53	ADMIN_EDIT	Edit admin settings
54	ADMIN_DELETE	Remove admin
55	ADMIN_UNLOCK	Unlock admin
56	ADMIN_REGENERATE_PASSWORD	Regenerate password for admin



57	ADMIN_PASSWORD_UPDATE	Update password for admin
58	SYSTEM_NOTIFICATIONS_TEMPLATE_CHANGE	System notifications template change
59	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_ADD	Add admin permission group
60	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_DELETE	Remove admin permission group
61	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_UPDATE	Update admin permission group
62	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_CHANGE_DEFAULT_GROUP	Change default admin permission group
63	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_ASSIGN_GROUP	Assign admin permission group by selection
64	REPORT_SPAM_BY_FILE	Report delivered message as spam
65	DOMAIN_DESTINATION_ROUTES_UPDATE	Update destination routes
66	DOMAIN_LOCAL_RECIPIENTS_ADD	Add local recipient
67	DOMAIN_LOCAL_RECIPIENTS_DELETE	Remove local recipient
68	DOMAIN_LOCAL_RECIPIENTS_STATE_CHANGE	Local recipients state change
69	DOMAIN_ALIASES_ADD	Add domain alias
70	DOMAIN_ALIASES_DELETE	Remove domain alias
71	DOMAIN_SETTINGS_UPDATE	Update domain settings
72	DOMAIN_SETTINGS_RESET_TO_DEFAULT	Reset domain settings to default
73	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_ADD	Add relay restriction
74	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_UPDATE	Update relay restriction
75	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_DELETE	Remove relay restriction
76	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_STATE_CHANGE	Relay restriction state change
77	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_ADD	Add outgoing user
78	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_SETTINGS_UPDATE	Edit outgoing user
79	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_DELETE	Remove outgoing user
80	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_LOCK	Lock outgoing user
81	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_UNLOCK	Unlock outgoing user
82	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_PASSWORD_UPDATE	Update password for outgoing user
83	DOMAIN_EMAIL_SIZE_RESTRICTION_CHANGE	Email size restriction change
84	DOMAIN_BLOCKED_EXTENSIONS_UPDATE	Update blocked extensions
85	DOMAIN_BLOCKED_EXTENSIONS_RESET_TO_DEFA ULT	Reset blocked extensions to default
86	DOMAIN_AUDIT_CONFIGURATION_CHANGE	Audit configuration change
87	DOMAIN_LDAP_CONFIGURATION_CHANGE	LDAP configuration change
88	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_ADD	Add incoming user
89	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_EDIT	Edit incoming user

90	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_DELETE	Remove incoming user
91	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_UNLOCK	Unlock incoming user
92	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_REGENERATE_PASSWO RD	Regenerate password for incoming user
93	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_PASSWORD_UPDATE	Update password for incoming user
94	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_ALIASES_UPDATE	Update incoming user aliases
95	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_MOVE_USER_TO_ALIAS	Move user to alias
96	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_MOVE_ALIAS_TO_USER	Move alias to incoming user
97	USER_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_ADD	Add user permission group
98	USER_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_DELETE	Remove user permission group
99	USER_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_UPDATE	Update user permission group
100	USER_PERMISSIONS_CHANGE_DEFAULT_GROUP	Change default user permission group
101	USER_PERMISSIONS_ASSIGN_GROUP	Assign user permission group by selection

Export Log Report to CSV

The log report can be exported to a comma separated value (CSV) file and is limited to 10,000 entries per file. If the entries exceed this value, exporting cannot be done and a warning will be displayed. Please note that exported file will display the entries in the same sorted order as in the interface.

To export log report to csv file

• Click the 'Export to CSV by filter' button.



The 'File Download' dialog will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Comodo Antispam Gateway - Administrator Guide

Opening CASG-AuditE	xport-2014-10-27 11_58_07.csv	x					
You have chosen to	You have chosen to open:						
CASG-AuditE	CASG-AuditExport-2014-10-27 11_58_07.csv						
which is: Text	which is: Text Document						
from: http://5.39.28.212:8080							
What should Firefo	What should Firefox do with this file?						
Open with	Notepad (default)	•					
Save File							
Do this <u>a</u> utomatically for files like this from now on.							
	OK Cano	el					

• Click 'Open' to view the file with an appropriate application or click 'OK' to save the file to your computer.

The values in the log report will be separated by commas and this file can be opened with appropriate application such as Excel or Openoffice Calc for easy analysis.

3.2.1.1.4.6 Whitelist / Blacklist

CASG allows the administrator of a domain to configure recipients or senders in whitelist or blacklist. While all filtering settings are disabled for whitelisted recipients, all mails sent by blacklisted senders are automatically rejected. Administrators can also choose to whitelist or blacklist a particular set of recipients/senders or a whole domain using wildcard character.

CASG also allows administrators to create highly granular rules in order to add senders, domains to whitelist/blacklist. Refer to the sections 'Create Whitelist Rule' and 'Create Blacklist Rule' for more details. Though whitelisted/blacklisted senders are applicable for all users in general, the senders list in 'Whitelist senders per user' and 'Blacklist senders per user' takes precedence over the general list. Refer to the sections Whitelist Senders Per User and Blacklist Senders Per User for more details.

The Administrators can export the whitelists and blacklists to comma separated values CSV files, which can be used in future if the users are to be re-added to the lists.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



Click the following links for more details.

- Recipient Whitelist
- Sender Whitelist
- Create Whitelist Rule
- Recipient Blacklist
- Sender Blacklist
- Create Blacklist Rule
- Whitelist Senders Per User
- Blacklist Senders Per User

Recipient Whitelist

Since all filtering checks for the whitelisted recipients are disabled, CASG recommends to use the option only for certain cases such as postmaster or abuse@domain.com. The Administrator can:

- Add users to recipient whitelist
- Export the list to CSV file for use in future
- Remove users from recipient whitelist
- Reset the list Delete all whitelisted recipients except the default recipients by clicking the 'Reset to default' button

To configure recipient whitelist

• Click the 'Whitelist / Blacklist' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Recipient whitelist' sub

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

tab.

Сомодо Antispam Gateway	Ī
Go!	
🕜 Dashboard	R
Domain dashboard	ſ,
🕭 Incoming	>
	>
🖻 Email management	> 1
😥 Audit log	>
% Whitelist / Blacklist	~
Recipient whitelist	
Sender whitelist	
Create whitelist rule	
Recipient blacklist	
Sender blacklist	
Create blacklist rule	
Whitelist senders per user	
Blacklist senders per user	
Account management	>

The 'Recipient whitelist' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:

Recip	🕐 Help				
🕂 Add	Delete	🕈 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file	
Recip	ient				
🕅 abuse	@docteamcas	g.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 postm	aster@doctea	mcasg.comodo.od.ua			
	1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]			Per page 15 🗸

By default, the selected domain will have 'abuse' and 'postmaster' as whitelisted recipients.

Adding Users to Recipient List

You can add recipients to white list in the following ways:

- Manually adding the recipients
- Importing from a CSV file

To manually add recipients

Click 'Add' to add a new user to the list

.

Recipient whitelist				
+ Add Delete	🕈 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file	
Recipient				
🔲 abuse@docteamcas	sg.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 postmaster@doctea	mcasg.comodo.od.ua			
I III	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]			Per page 15 🗸

The 'Add' dialog box will be displayed:

Add		×
E-mail user1		@ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
	Save	Cancel

- Enter the recipient's name in the E-mail text field and click the 'Save' button.
- To add a particular set of recipients to whitelist, prefix or suffix the wildcard * in the E-mail text field. For example, enter *.stores for all the recipients in stores department to be whitelisted.
- To add a whole domain to whitelist, enter the wildcard * in the E-mail text field and click the 'Save' button. Now all the recipients in that domain will be whitelisted.

The recipient's name will be added to the list.

Recipient whitelist						0) Help
🕂 Add	🗑 Delete	🐴 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	Import from CSV file			
📄 Recip	ient						-
🔲 abuse	@docteamcas	g.comodo.od.ua					
🔲 postm	aster@doctea	mcasg.comodo.od.ua					
🔲 user1 (Ddocteamcas	g.comodo.od.ua					
I4 4	1 /1	I [1-3/3]			Per page	15	~

To import users to whitelist from CSV file

Administrators can import many users from a file to Recipient whitelist at a time. The users should be saved in the format shown below as an example: user1@testdomain

user2@testdomain

user3@testdomain

· Click the 'Import from CSV file' to import users to whitelist from a CSV file

Recipient whitelist				0	Help	
🕂 Add	Delete	🕈 Reset to default	💼 Export to CSV file 💼 Import from CSV file			
Recip	vient					*
🔲 abuse	@docteamcas	sg.comodo.od.ua				
🔲 postm	aster@doctea	mcasg.comodo.od.ua				
I4 4	1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]		Per page	15	~

The Upload dialog will be displayed.

Upload >	ĸ
Upload csv file. Each line should contain the full e-mail	
For example:	
testuser1@testdomain testuser2@testdomain	
Upload	

• Click the 'Upload' button and navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The maximum size of the file that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

The upload will be placed in import tasks queue and the progress of the upload will be displayed. If you want to remove the upload from the queue, click the 'Remove import task' button. The 'Remove import task' deletes *only* a remaining part of not imported task.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Recipient whitelist			
Recipient whitelist		? He	lp
Import is in process. Please wait			×
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 😧 Remove import task 🏝 Export to CSV file			
Recipient			
abuse@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 postmaster@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
	Per page	15	-

On completion of the upload process, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Recipient whitelist	
Recipient whitelist	🕐 Help
Total lines processed 3	
Imported 2 user(s)	
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finished	×
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🥱 Reset to default 🍰 Export to CSV file 🍰 Import from CSV	file
Recipient	
abuse@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
E bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
jemmy@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
postmaster@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
◀ ◀ 1 /1 ▶ ▶ [1-5/5]	Per page 15 🗸

The recipient whiteslist from .csv file will be uploaded and the administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Exporting the Recipient Whitelist to CSV file

The administrator can save the configured recipient whitelist by exporting it as a CSV file. If required in future, the administrator can import the users from the csv file, for example for a new account or after a reset.

To export the list

• Click the 'Export to CSV file' button to save the list of whitelisted recipients as a CSV file

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Recipient whitelist	
Recipient whitelist	2 Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🥱 Reset to default 🏟 Export to CSV file 💩 Import from CS	SV file
Opening RecipientWhiteList_docteamcasg.comodo.od.uz.csv	*
You have chosen to open:	
RecipientWhiteList_docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua.csv	
which is: Text Document	
from: http://5.39.28.212:8080	
What should Firefox do with this file?	
Open with Notepad (default)	Per page 15 🗸
Save File Save Fil	
Do this <u>a</u> utomatically for files like this from now on.	
OK Cancel	

A file download dialog will be displayed.

• Click 'OK' and navigate to the location in your computer and save the file or the file will be downloaded to your download folder.

Deleting Users from the Recipient Whitelist

• To delete a recipient from the whitelist, select the recipient from the list and click the 'Delete' button

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamor	asg.comodo.od.ua / Recipie	ent whitelist	
Recipient whitelist	Help		
+ Add Delete Reset to default			
Recipient			*
abuse@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 jemmy@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 postmaster@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
🔽 user1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			
◀ ◀ 1 /1 ▶ ▶ [1-5/5]			Per page 15 🗸

• Click 'OK' to confirm your changes





Sender Whitelist

All the filtering checks for whitelisted senders to the recipients of the selected domain are disabled. Comodo strongly recommends to use this option only when the system wrongly blocks emails from a certain trusted sender. Though whitelisted senders are applicable for all users in the domain, the senders list in 'Blacklist senders per user' takes precedence over the general list. Refer to the section **Blacklist Senders Per User** for more details. The Administrator can:

- Add users to Sender whitelist
- Export the list to CSV file for use in future
- Remove users from Sender whitelist
- · Reset the list Delete all whitelisted senders and make the list empty by clicking the 'Reset to default' button

To configure sender whitelist

Click the 'Whitelist / Blacklist' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Sender whitelist' sub tab.



The 'Sender whitelist' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard	Domains / Dom	ain dashboard - doctearnc	asq.comodo.od.ua / Sender	whitelist				
Sender whitelist					🕜 не			lp
+ Add	🗑 Delete	🕈 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file				
Sende	er							-
🔲 angel@	gheaven.com							
14 4	1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-1/1]			Per page	15	~	•

Adding Users to Sender Whitelist

You can add recipients to white list in the following ways:

- Manually adding the senders
- Importing from a CSV file

To manually add senders

Click 'Add' to add a new whitelisted sender

The 'Add' dialog box will be displayed:

Add		×
E-mail		@
	Save	Cancel

- Enter the sender name in the E-mail textbox and sender's email domain name after the @ symbol and click the 'Save' button. Repeat the process to add more whitelisted senders.
- To add a particular set of senders to whitelist, prefix or suffix the wildcard character * in the E-mail text field and senders' email domain name after the @ symbol. For example, enter *.stores.com for all the senders in stores department to be whitelisted.
- To add a specific username from any mail domain to the whitelist, enter the username in the mail text field and the wildcard character * after the @ symbol. For example, enter john@* for whitelisting the username 'john' with any email domain name.
- To add a set of users or specific username from any email domain with a specific top level domain (TLD) name like .com, .org, enter the wildcard character * or username in the Email text field and enter * followed by the TLD after the @ symbol. For example, '*@*.com' will whitelist all the senders from all the email domains ending with '.com'
- To add a whole domain to whitelist, enter the wildcard character * in the E-mail text field and email domain after the @ symbol and click the 'Save' button. Now all the senders with the entered domain name will be whitelisted.

The list of whitelisted senders will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard	/ <u>Domains</u> / <u>Dom</u>	ain dashboard - doctearnc	asg.comodo.od.ua / Sender	whitelist	
Sende	er white	list			🕜 Help
🕂 Add	🗑 Delete	🔊 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	Import from CSV file	
Sende	er				-
🔲 angel@	gheaven.com				
🔲 alice@)gmail.com				
	1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]			Per page 15 🗸

To import senders to whitelist from CSV file

Administrators can import many senders from a file to Sender whitelist at a time. The senders' address should be saved in the format shown below as an example: sender1@domainname1 sender2@domainname2 sender3@domainname3

• Click the 'Import from CSV file' to import senders to whitelist from a CSV file.

Sende	er white	list		🕐 Help
🕂 Add	Delete	🕈 Reset to default	Export to CSV file import from CSV file	
Sende	er.			
🕅 angel@	Dheaven.com			
🔲 alice@	gmail.com			
	1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]		Per page 15 🗸

 Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The maximum size of the file that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

Upload	×
Upload csv file. Each line should contain the full e-mail	
For example:	
testuser1@testdomain testuser2@testdomain	
Upload	

The upload will be placed in import tasks queue and the progress of the upload will be displayed. If you want to remove the upload from the queue, click the 'Remove import task' button. The 'Remove import task' deletes *only* a remaining part of not imported task.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Sender whitelist	
Sender whitelist	🕜 Help
Import is in process. Please wait	×
+ Add 🗑 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 🗱 Remove import task 🏝 Export to CSV file	
Sender	*
alice@gmail.com	
angel@heaven.com	
	Per page 15 🗸

On completion of the upload process, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Sender whitelist	
Sender whitelist	🕐 Help
Total lines processed 4	
Imported 3 user(s)	
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finished	
+ Add 🗊 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 🏝 Export to CSV file 🏝 Import from CSV file	
Sender	-
alice@gmail.com	
angel@heaven.com	
Talcon@hotmail.com	
smith@rediff.com	
wilecoyte696@yahoo.com	
	Per page 15 🗸

The sender whietlist from .csv file will be uploaded and the administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Exporting the Sender Whitelist to CSV file

The administrator can save the configured sender whitelist by exporting it as a CSV file. If required in future, the administrator can import the users from the csv file, for example for a new account or after a reset.

To export the list

• Click the 'Export to CSV file' to save the list of whitelisted senders as a CSV file

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Sender whitelist	
Sender whitelist	Help
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 👶 Export to CSV file 💩 Imp	port from CSV file
Opening SenderWhiteList_docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua.gsv	
You have chosen to open:	
SenderWhiteList_docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua.csv	
which is: Text Document	
from: http://5.39.28.212:8080	
What should Firefox do with this file?	
Open with Notepad (default)	
Save File	
Do this <u>a</u> utomatically for files like this from now on.	Per page 15 V
OK Cancel	

A file download dialog will be displayed.

•

.

• Click 'OK' and navigate to the location in your computer and save the file or the file will be downloaded to your download folder.

Deleting Users from the Sender Whitelist

To delete a sender from the whitelist, select the sender from the list and click the 'Delete' button.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamo	asq.comodo.od.ua / Sender	whitelist			
Sender whitelist				0	Help
+ Add Delete Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file			
Sender					
✓ alice@gmail.com					
angel@heaven.com					
E falcon@hotmail.com					
smith@rediff.com					
wilecoyte696@yahoo.com					
			Per page	15	~

Click 'OK' to confirm your changes.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



Create Whitelist Rule

CASG allows administrators to create rules in order to add sender to whitelist based on parameters such as sender's name, sender's reported domain, sender's sending server, sender's sending MTA or relay and the subject of the mail. You can also use wildcards, asterisks (*) and question marks (?) and parameters from the email headers to create a highly granular rule according to your requirements.

 Click the 'Whitelist / Blacklist' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Create whitelist rule' sub tab.



The 'Create whitelist rule' screen will be displayed:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain	dashboard - csopa4.comodo.od.ua / Cr	reate whitelist rule		
Create whitelist	rule			
+ Add Delete				Refresh
Filters				
🔄 Sender	 Received from 	* Received by	* Subject	
E *@*		relay1.casg		
4 4 <mark>1</mark> _/1 ⊪	ы			Per page 15 🗸

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using Filter option to search whitelist rules

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain da	shboard - csoqa4 comodo.od u	a / Create whitelist rule			
Create whitelist r	ule				
+ Add Delete					Refresh
S Filters					
+ Sender	✓ contains	•			Apply filter
Sender	* Received from	* Re	ceived by	* Subject	*

You can add more filters by clicking	Ŧ	for narrowing down your search.

Dashboard / Domains / Don	nain dasht	coard - csopa4.com	odo.od.ua / Create wi	itelist rule	
Create whitel	ist ru	le			
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete]				Refresh
S Filters					
+ Sender	~	contains	v		Apply filter
Received from	~	contains	v		
- Subject	~	contains	v		
Sender		* Received	from	* Received by	* Subject
E *@*				relay1.casg	

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

• Sender: Will execute a search of senders according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in

column 2.

- Received from: Will execute a search of 'Received from' column according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Received by: Will execute a search of 'Received by' column according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Subject:** Will execute a search 'Subject' column according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following filters are available in the second drop-down:

- Equals: Displays the whitelist rule that was entered in full in the text box.
- Contains: Displays all the whitelist rules that contains the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all the whitelist rules that does not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all the whitelist rules that starts with the words entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all the whitelist rules, except the one entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the the whitelist rules that ends with the words entered in the text box.

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the Refresh button to

button to display all the domains.

Note: To display all the whitelist rules after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

To create a whitelist rule

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'Create whitelist rule' interface

Create white	list rule			Refresh
Filters				
C Sender	* Received from	Received by	Subject	
E *@*	*	relay1 casg		
14 4 1 /1	F [1, 1/1]			

The 'Add whitelist rule' dialog will be displayed:

Add whitelist rule	×
Sender:	@
Received from:	
Received by:	
Subject:	
	Save Cancel

- Sender Enter the name of the sender and the sender's domain name.
- **Received from** This can be obtained from a mail header. Enter the first 'Received from' entry in the mail header (reading the headers from bottom to top).
- Received by This can be obtained from a mail header. Enter the first 'Received by' entry in the mail header (reading the headers from bottom to top).
- Subject Enter the subject line of the email

Click 'Save' after filling all the fields

You can use wildcards asterisks (*) and question marks (?) to create a rule according to your requirement.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard -	csoga4.comodo.od.ua / Create whitelist ru	le	
Create whitelist rule			
Successfully saved			8
🖶 Add 🗑 Delete			Refresh
S Filters			
🖻 Sender 🔺	Received from	* Received by	Subject
believeme@gmail.com	mail-wi0-f174.google.com	10.28.20.16 with HTTP	Excellent Products
E *@*	•	relay1.casg	
≪ ≪ 1 /1 ≫ ≫ [1-	2/2]		Per page 15 🗸

A confirmation message will be displayed and the new whitelist rule will be added to the list.

To delete a whitelist rule

•

• Select the whitelist rule(s) that you want to remove from the list and click the 'Delete' button

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard -	csqqa4.comodo.od.ua / Create whitelist rule		
Create whitelist rule			
+ Add Delete			Refresh
S Filter			
n ender ^	Received from ^	Received by	Subject *
elieveme@gmail.com	mail-wi0-f174.google.com	10.28.20.16 with HTTP	Excellent Products
E *@*	*	relay1.casg	
∉ ⊲ 1 1 - [1-	2/2]		Per page 15 🗸

A confirmation dialog will be displayed:

Remove rules			×
Pre you su	ire you wa	nt to remove	selected rule?
	ОК	Cancel	

Click 'OK' to confirm the removal of selected whitelist rules

Recipient Blacklist

CASG will automatically block all emails to blacklisted recipients. Please note that the messages will not be quarantined and legitimate email sending SMTP servers will send a bounce message to the sender. The Administrator can:

- Add users to recipient blacklist
- Export the list to CSV file for use in future
- Remove users from recipient blacklist
- Reset the list Delete all blacklisted senders and make the list empty by clicking the 'Reset to default' button

To configure recipient blacklist

• Click the 'Whitelist / Blacklist' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Recipient blacklist' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Recipient blacklist' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:

Dashboard	Domains / Dom	ain dashboard - doctearnc	asg.comodo.od.ua / Recipie	nt blacklist			
Recip	ient bla	cklist				0	Help
🕂 Add	🗑 Delete	🕈 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file			
Recip	ient						+
🔳 user5(gdocteamcas	g.comodo.od.ua					
I4 4	1 /1	▶ ▶I [1-1/1]			Per page	15	~

Adding Users to Recipient Blacklist

You can add recipients to the black list in the following ways:

- Manually adding the recipients
- Importing from a CSV file

To manually add recipients

• Click 'Add' to add a new user to the list

The 'Add' dialog box will open.



Add		×
E-mail jsmith		@ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
	Save	Cancel

- Enter the recipient name in the E-mail textbox and click the 'Save' button. Repeat the process to add more recipients to blacklist.
- To add a particular set of recipients to blacklist, prefix or suffix the wildcard * in the E-mail text field. For example, enter *.stores for all the recipients in stores department to be blacklisted.
- To add a whole domain to blacklist, enter the wildcard * in the E-mail text field and click the 'Save' button. Now all the recipients in that domain will be blacklisted.

The list of blacklisted recipients will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Dom	nain dashboard - doctearnc	asq.comodo.od.ua / Recipie	nt blacklist	
Recipient bla	cklist			😮 Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete	🖘 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	Import from CSV file	
Recipient				
🔲 user5@docteamcas	sg.comodo.od.ua			
🔲 jsmith@docteamcas	sg.comodo.od.ua			
	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]			Per page 15 🗸

To import users to blacklist from CSV file

.

Administrators can import many users from a file to Recipient blacklist at a time. The users should be saved in the format shown below as an example: user1@testdomain user2@testdomain user3@testdomain user3@testdomain

• Click the 'Import from CSV file' button to import users to blacklist from a CSV file.

Dashboard	Domains / Dom	ain dashboard - doctearnc	asq.comodo.od.ua / Recipient blacklist			
Recip	ient bla	cklist			0	Help
🕂 Add	🗑 Delete	🕈 Reset to default	💼 Export to CSV file 💼 Import from CSV file			
Recip	ient					*
🔲 user5(gdocteamcas	g.comodo.od.ua				
	1 /1	▶ ▶I [1-1/1]		Per page	15	~

Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The maximum size of the file that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Upload X
Upload csv file. Each line should contain the full e-mail
For example:
testuser1@testdomain testuser2@testdomain
Upload

The upload will be placed in import tasks queue and the progress of the upload will be displayed. If you want to remove the upload from the queue, click the 'Remove import task' button. The 'Remove import task' deletes *only* a remaining part of not imported task.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Recipient blacklist			
Recipient blacklist		0	Help
Import is in process. Please wait			×
+ Add 🗑 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 🔀 Remove import task 📩 Export to CSV file			
Recipient			-
bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			^
user5@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua			~
	Per page	15	•

On completion of the upload process, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Recipient blacklist	
Recipient blacklist	Help
Total lines processed 4	X
Imported 4 user(s)	
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finished	
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 🏥 Export to CSV file 🏥 Import from CSV file	
Recipient	
🔲 black@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
🔲 bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
duncan@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
ismith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
user5@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
◀ ◀ 1 /1 ▶ ▶ [1-5/5]	Per page 15 🗸

The recipient blacklist from .csv file will be uploaded and the administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Exporting the Recipient Blacklist to CSV file

The administrator can save the configured recipient blacklist by exporting it as a CSV file. If required in future, the administrator can import the users from the csv file, for example for a new account or after a reset.

To export the list

· Click the 'Export to CSV file' to save the list of blacklisted recipients as a CSV file

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Recipient black	ist
Recipient blacklist	Help
+ Add 🛅 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 💩 Export to CSV file 🍰 In	nport from CSV file
Recipient	
Opening RecipientBlackList_docteamcasg.comodo.octa.csv	
You have chosen to open: RecipientBlackList_docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua.csv	
which is: Text Document	
What should Firefox do with this file?	Per page 15 V
Open with Notepad (default)	
Save File Save Fil	
Do this <u>a</u> utomatically for files like this from now on.	
OK Cancel	

A file download dialog will be displayed.

 Click 'OK' and navigate to the location in your computer and save the file or the file will be downloaded to your download folder.

Deleting Users from the Recipient Blacklist

• To delete a recipient from the blacklist, select the recipient from the list and click the 'Delete' button

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamo	asa.comodo.od.ua / Recipie	nt blacklist			
Recipient blacklist				0	Help
+ Add Delete Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file]		
Recipient					*
✓ black@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua					
Dob@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua					
🔲 duncan@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua					
✓ jsmith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua					
🔲 user5@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua					
			Per page	15	~

 Click 'OK' to confirm your changes. The user will be removed from the blacklist and the mails addressed to the user will be allowed as per the existing filter settings in CASG.

Remove recipient(s)	×
Are you sure you wan recipient(s)?	it to remove the selected
ок	Cancel

Sender Blacklist

CASG will automatically block all emails from blacklisted senders. Please note that the messages will not be quarantined and legitimate email sending SMTP servers will send a bounce message to the sender. The administrator can:

- Add users to sender blacklist
- Export the list to CSV file for use in future
- Remove users from sender blacklist
- · Reset the list Delete all blacklisted senders and make the list empty by clicking the 'Reset to default' button

To configure sender blacklist

Click the 'Whitelist / Blacklist' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Sender blacklist' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The 'Sender blacklist' interface of the selected domain will be displayed:

Dashboard	/ <u>Domains</u> / <u>Dom</u>	ain dashboard - docteamc	as <u>q.comodo.od.ua</u> / Sender	blacklist			
Sender blacklist					0	Help	
🕂 Add	Delete	🐴 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file			
Sende	er						
🔲 devil@	hell.com						
I4 4	1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-1/1]			Per page	15	~

Adding Users to Senders Blacklist

You can add senders to black list in the following ways:

- Manually adding the senders
- Importing from a CSV file

To manually add senders

Click 'Add' to add a new blacklisted sender

The 'Add' dialog box will be displayed:



Add			×
E-mail	brutus	@ believen	ot.com
		Save Cancel	

- Enter the sender name in the E-mail textbox and sender's email domain name after the @ symbol and click the 'Save' button. Repeat the process to add more blacklisted senders.
- To add a particular set of senders to blacklist, prefix or suffix the wildcard character * in the E-mail text field and senders' email domain name after the @ symbol. For example, enter *.stores.com for all the senders in stores department to be blacklisted.
- To add a specific username from any mail domain to the blacklist, enter the username in the mail text field and the wildcard character * after the @ symbol. For example, enter john@* for blacklisting the username 'john' with any email domain name.
- To add a set of users or specific username from any email domain with a specific top level domain (TLD) name like .com, .org, enter the wildcard character * or username in the Email text field and enter * followed by the TLD after the @ symbol. For example, '*@*.com' will whitelist all the senders from all the email domains ending with '.com'
- To add a whole domain to whitelist, enter the wildcard character * in the E-mail text field and email domain after the @ symbol and click the 'Save' button. Now all the senders with the entered domain name will be whitelisted.
- To add a particular set of senders to blacklist, prefix or suffix the wildcard * in the E-mail text field and senders' email domain name after the @ symbol. For example, enter *.stores for all the senders in stores department to be blacklisted.
- To add a whole domain to blacklist, enter the wildcard * in the E-mail text field and email domain after the @ symbol and click the 'Save' button. Now all the senders with the domain name entered will be blacklisted.

The list of blacklisted senders will be displayed.

Dashboard	Domains / Dom	ain dashboard - docteamc	asq.comodo.od.ua / Sender	blacklist			
Sender blacklist			e		Help		
🕂 Add	🗑 Delete	🕈 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file			
Sende	er						
🔳 devil@	hell.com						
🔲 brutusi	@believenot.c	om					
	1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]			Per page	15	~

To import senders to blacklist from CSV file

Administrators can import many senders from a file to Sender blacklist at a time. The senders' address should be saved in the format shown below as an example: sender1@domainname1 sender2@domainname2 sender3@domainname3

• Click the 'Import from CSV file' to import senders to blacklist from a CSV file.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - doctearncasg.comodo.od.ua / Sender blacklist			
Sender blacklist		0	Help
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 🎄 Export to CSV file 💼 Import from CSV file			
Sender			*
devil@hell.com			
E brutus@believenot.com			
	Per page	15	~

Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The maximum size of the file that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

Upload	×
Upload csv file. Each line should contain the full e-mail	
For example:	
testuser1@testdomain testuser2@testdomain	
Upload	

The upload will be placed in import tasks queue and the progress of the upload will be displayed. If you want to remove the upload from the queue, click the 'Remove import task' button. The 'Remove import task' deletes *only* a remaining part of not imported task.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Sender blacklist			
Sender blacklist		0	Help
Import is in process. Please wait			×
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🥱 Reset to default 🗶 Remove import task 🎰 Export to CSV file			
Sender			-
E brutus@believenot.com			^
🔲 devil@hell.com			~
	Per page	15	~

On completion of the upload process, the results will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Sender blacklist	
Sender blacklist	🕜 Help
Total lines processed 7	
Imported 6 user(s)	×
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finished	×
+ Add 🛱 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 🍰 Export to CSV file 🍰 Import from CSV file	
Sender	-
E brutus@believenot.com	
Chen@yahoo.com	
devil@hell.com	
Talcon@hotmail.com	
lang@gmail.com	
penny@rocketmail.com	
smith@rediff.com	
🔲 wilecoyte696@yahoo.com	
	Per page 15 🗸

The sender blacklist from .csv file will be uploaded and the administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Exporting the Sender Blacklist to CSV file

The administrator can save the configured sender blacklist by exporting it as a CSV file. If required in future, the administrator can import the users from the csv file, for example for a new account or after a reset.

To export the list

• Click the 'Export to CSV file' to save the list of blacklisted senders as a CSV file
COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Sender blacklist	
Sender blacklist	Help
Add 🛅 Delete 🦘 Reset to default 🎰 Export to CSV file 🎰 Imp	ort from CSV file
Sender	
Opening SenderBlackList_docteamcasg.comodo.cd.ua.csv	
You have chosen to open: SenderBlackList_docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua.csv which is: Text Document from: http://5.39.28.212:8080 What should Firefox do with this file?	
 Open with Notepad (default) Save File Do this <u>a</u>utomatically for files like this from now on. 	Per page 15 🗸
OK Cancel	

A file download dialog will be displayed.

• Click 'OK' and navigate to the location in your computer and save the file or the file will be downloaded to your download folder.

Deleting Users from the Sender Blacklist

• To delete a sender from the blacklist, select the sender from the list and click the 'Delete' button.

Jenue	a black	list			C Helt
🕂 Add	Delete	🕈 Reset to default	Export to CSV file	import from CSV file	
Sende	er				
🔲 brutus	@believenot.c	om			
🔽 chen@	yahoo.com				
🔲 devil@	hell.com				
🔽 falcon(@hotmail.com				
🔲 lang@	gmail.com				
🔽 penny(@rocketmail.co	om			
🔲 smith@	@rediff.com				
🔲 wileco	/te696@yahoo	o.com			
tat at 1	1 /1	► ►I [1-8/8]			Per page 15

 Click 'OK' to confirm your changes. The sender(s) will be removed from the blacklist. The emails from the senders will be allowed as per the existing filter settings in CASG.



Create Blacklist Rule

CASG allows administrators to create rules in order to add sender to blacklist based on parameters such as sender's name, sender's reported domain, sender's sending server, sender's sending MTA or relay and the subject of the mail. You can also use wildcards, asterisks (*) and question marks (?) and parameters from the email headers to create a highly granular rule according to your requirements.

 Click the 'Whitelist / Blacklist' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Create blacklist rule' sub tab.



The 'Create blacklist rule' screen will be displayed:



Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - csoga4.comodo.od.ua / Create blackist rule		
Create blacklist rule		
+ Add 🗇 Delete		Refresh
S Filters		
Sender Received from	Received by	Subject *
🔄 johncraig@gmail.com *	*	
I≪ ≪ 1 /1 > >I [1-1/1]		Per page 15 🗸

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using Filter option to search blacklist rules

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - csqqa4.comodo.cd.ua / Cre	ate blacklist rule		
Create blacklist rule			
Add 🛅 Delete			Refresh
S Filters			
+ Sender 🗸 contains 🗸			Apply filter
Sender * Received from	* Received by	* Subject	-
johncraig@gmail.com *	•		

	_	
You can add more filters by clicking	Т	for narrowing down your search.

Create blackl	ist rule		
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete			Refresh
Filters			
+ Sender	▼ contains	¥	Apply filter
Received from	✓ equals	•	
	at at with		

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

• Sender: Will execute a search of senders according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

- Received from: Will execute a search of 'Received from' column according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Received by: Will execute a search of 'Received by' column according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Subject:** Will execute a search 'Subject' column according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following filters are available in the second drop-down:

- Equals: Displays the blacklist rule that was entered in full in the text box.
- Contains: Displays all the blacklist rules that contains the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all the blacklist rules that does not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all the blacklist rules that starts with the words entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all the blacklist rules, except the one entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the the blacklist rules that ends with the words entered in the text box.

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the Click the domains.

Note: To display all the blacklist rules after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

To create a blacklist rule

Click the 'Add' button in the 'Create blacklist rule' interface

Create blacklist rule	
+ Add Delete	Refresh
Filters	
+ Sender v contains v	Apply filter

The 'Add blacklist rule' dialog will be displayed:

Add blacklist rule	×
Sender:	@
Received from:	
Received by:	
Subject:	
	Save Cancel

- Sender Enter the name of the sender and the sender's domain name.
- **Received from** This can be obtained from a mail header. Enter the first 'Received from' entry in the mail header (reading the headers from bottom to top).
- Received by This can be obtained from a mail header. Enter the first 'Received by' entry in the mail header (reading the headers from bottom to top).
- Subject Enter the subject line of the email

You can use wildcards asterisks (*) and question marks (?) to create a rule according to your requirement.

• Click 'Save' after filling all the fields

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard -	csqqa4.comodo.od.ua / Create blacklist rule			
Create blacklist rule				
Successfully saved				E
🖶 Add 🗑 Delete			R	lefresh
S Filters				
Sender *	Received from *	Received by	Subject	
🔄 johncraig@gmail.com	*	*		
🕅 donotbelieveme@hell.com	127.0.0.1	106.10.196.91	Cheap Products	
∉ ∉ 1 /1 ⊳ ⊳ - [1-	2/2]		Per page 15	5 👻

A confirmation message will be displayed and the new blacklist rule will be added to the list.

To delete a blacklist rule

· Select the blacklist rule(s) that you want to remove from the list and click the 'Delete' button

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard	rd - csqqa4.comodo.od.ua / Create	blacklist rule				
Create blacklist rule	1					
+ Add Delete					Refr	esh
Filters						
🔄 Seider	* Received from	.*	Received by	Subject		-
chncraig@gmail.com			*			
donotbelieveme@hell.com	127.0.0.1		106.10.196.91	Cheap Products		
	[1-2/2]				Per page 15	•

A confirmation dialog will be displayed:



Click 'OK' to confirm the removal of selected blacklist rules

Whitelist Senders Per User

CASG allows administrators to add senders to whitelist on per user basis. Whitelisted senders for specific recipients can be added manually, importing from a .csv file and from the users' requests. All the filtering checks for whitelisted senders to the requested / added recipients of the selected domain are disabled. Comodo strongly recommends to use this option after analyzing the request is genuine and warranted.

To configure sender whitelist per user

 Select the 'Whitelist / Blacklist ' tab from the left hand side navigation to expand it and then click the 'Whitelist senders per user' sub tab.



The 'Whitelist senders per user' interface will be displayed:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Vhitelist senders per user	Hell
Add Delete 🗗 Import from CSV file	Refrest
S Filters	
Sender	Recipient
🗖 demo2@csg.comodo.od.ua	john
	Per page 15 🗸

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using the Filter option to search senders and recipients

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.co	modo.od.u	ua / Whitelist senders per user	
Whitelist senders per user			🕗 Help
Add Delete Import from CSV file			Refresh
📎 Filters			
+ Sender	~		Apply filter
Sender	*	Recipient	
🔲 demo2@csg.comodo.od.ua		john	
◀ ◀ 1 /1 ▶ ▶ [1-1/1]			Per page 15 🗸

You can add more filters by clicking 🕈 for narrowing down your search.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

vnitelist ser	iders per user		Hel
+ Add 🗑 Delete	Import from CSV file		Refrest
Filters			
Sender	✓ contains	▼	Apply filter
Sender	K contains	×	
Sender	<u>d</u>		
Recipient		Recipient	
_	do.od.ua	john	
] demo2@csg.como			

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- Sender: Will execute a search of senders according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Recipient:** Will execute a search of recipients according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

The following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all senders / recipients that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all senders / recipients except the one entered in the text box.
- Contains: Displays all senders / recipients that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all senders / recipients that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all senders / recipients that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the senders / recipients that end with the words entered in the text box.

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the Refresh button to display all users.

Note: To display all the Whitelist senders after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

From this interface administrators can:

- Add senders to whitelist per user
- · Remove senders from Whitelist senders per user list

Adding Senders to Whiltelist Per User

You can add senders to whitelist in the following ways:

- Manually adding the senders
- Importing senders from a CSV file
- Adding from Whitelist requests from users

Manually adding the senders

The administrator can manually specify the whitelisted sender and corresponding recipient one-by-one to be added. **To manually add senders to whitelist per user basis**

• Click 'Add' to add a new sender to the list. The 'Add sender' dialog box will be displayed:

Dasnobarg / Domains / Domain dasnobarg - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / whitelist senders per user	
Whitelist senders per user	🕑 не
Add Delete import from CSV file	Refrest
Pilters	
Sender Recipient	
🔄 demo:@csg.comodo.od.ua john	
	Per page 15
Add sender	×
Sender: angel @ heaven.com	
Sender: angel @ heaven.com Recipient: bob @ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	

- Enter the sender's username in the E-mail textbox and sender's email domain name after the @ symbol in the first row.
- Enter the recipient's name in the Recipient text box in the second row. Note: The recipient should be a valid user.
- Click the 'Save' button. Repeat the process to add more whitelisted senders for the user.

The list of whitelisted senders will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Whitelist senders per user	Hel
+ Add Delete Delete Import from CSV file	Refresh
S Filters	
Sender -	Recipient
	john
🔲 demo2@csg.comodo.od.ua	
demo2@csg.comodo.od.ua angel@heaven.com	bob

Importing senders from a CSV file

Administrators can import a multiple senders at a time from a comma separated values (CSV) file to Sender whitelist per user. The list of whitelisted senders and respective recipients can be created using notepad or a speadsheet application like MS Excel or OpenOffice Calc and saved in .csv format. Each line in the .csv file should contain the sender's email address and the username of the recipient or sender's email address and the recipient's email address, separated by a comma. An example is shown below:

sender1@anydomain.com, recipient1

sender2@anydomain.com, recipient2@domain.com

sender3@somedomain.com, recipient3

To import senders to whitelist from CSV file

• Click the 'Import from CSV file' from the 'Whitelist senders per user' interface. The 'Upload' dialog will appear.

Dashboard / Doma	ins / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Whitelist senders per user	
Whitelist	senders per user	O He
- Add	Delete 💼 Import from CSV file	Refres
Filters		
E Sender	Recipient Upload Upload Upload csv file. Each line should contain two columns: sender,username For example: sender@anydomain.com, recipient sender@anydomain.com, recipient@domain.com Upload	

· Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The maximum size of the file

that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

The upload will be placed in import tasks queue and the progress of the upload will be displayed. If you want to remove the upload from the queue, click the 'Remove import task' button. The 'Remove import task' deletes only a remaining part of not imported task.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.u	a / Whitelist senders per user
Whitelist senders per user	Help
Import is in process. Please wait	×
+ Add Delete Cancel import from CSV file	Refresh
S Filters	
Sender	Recipient
🔲 demo2@csg.comodo.od.ua	john
	Per page 15 🗸

On completion of the upload process, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od	ua / Whitelist senders per user	
Whitelist senders per user		Help
Total lines processed 2		×
Imported 2 senders as whitelisted		×
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finis	×	
+ Add 🗇 Delete 🏝 Import from CSV file		Refresh
S Filters		
Sender	Recipient	•
peter@pearlygates.com	john	
🔲 demo2@csg.comodo.od.ua	john	
🗐 alice@heaven.com	bob	
[◀ ◀ 1 /1 ▶ ▶ [1-3/3]		Per page 15 💌

The sender whitelist per user from .csv file will be uploaded and the administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Adding from Whitelist requests from users

The administrator can add senders to whitelist based on the requests of the users. Refer to the section **Email Management** > **Whitelisted Requests** for more details.

Deleting Senders from Whitelist

• To delete a sender from the whitelist, select the sender from the list and click the 'Delete' button.

Whitelist senders per user	2 He	
Add Delete 🔝 Import from CSV file	Refres	
S Filters		
Sender	* Recipient	
🔲 peter@pearlygates.com	john	
✓ elf@empire.com	avantistude	
🔲 demo2@csg.ccmodo.od.ua	john	
🔲 angel@heaven.com	bob	
Remove senders Are you sure you want to remove sele senders?	bob Ected	

• Click 'OK' in the confirmation dialog.

Blacklist Senders Per User

CASG allows administrators to add senders to blacklist on per user basis. This feature is useful in scenarios where you want to allow mails from a particular sender to all users in the domain but want to block the sender for a particular recipient in the domain. Senders for blacklisting for specific recipients can be added manually, importing from a .csv file and from the users' requests.

To configure sender blacklist per user

 Select the 'Whitelist / Blacklist ' tab from the left hand side navigation to expand it and then click the 'Blacklist senders per user' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The 'Blacklist senders per user' interface will be displayed:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcaso.comodo.od.	ua / Blacklist senders per user
Blacklist senders per user	P Help
Add Delete Delete	Refresh
S Filters	
Sender	Recipient
🗐 demo1@csg.comodo.od.ua	john
◀ ◀ 1 /1 ▶ ▶ [1-1/1]	Per page 15 🗸

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column.

Using the Filter option to search senders and recipients

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashb	oard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.	ua / Blacklist senders per user	
Blacklist senders p	oer user		Help
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 💩 Imp	oort from CSV file		Refresh
S Filters			
+ Sender 🗸	contains 🗸		Apply filter
Sender	*	Recipient	*
🔲 demo1@csg.comodo.od.ua		john	
	[1-1/1]		Per page 15 🗸
You can add more filters by clicking Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashb Blacklist senders p	for narrowing down you oard - docteamcasg.comodo.ed. Der USER	ur search. ua / Blacklist senders per user	Pelp
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete 💩 Imp	ort from CSV file		Refresh
S Filters			
+ Sender 🗸	contains 🗸		Apply filter
Sender 🗸	contains 🗸		
Sender Recipient	*	Recipient	*
🔲 demo1@csg.comodo.od.ua		john	
≪ ≪ 1 /1	[1-1/1]		Per page 15 🗸

You can remove a filter by clicking the 💻 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- Sender: Will execute a search of senders according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Recipient:** Will execute a search of recipients according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

The following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all senders / recipients that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all senders / recipients except the one entered in the text box.
- Contains: Displays all senders / recipients that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all senders / recipients that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all senders / recipients that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the senders / recipients that end with the words entered in the text box.
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

- Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.
- Click the

Befresh button to display all users.

Note: To display all the Blacklist senders after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

From this interface administrators can:

- Add senders to blacklist per user
- Remove senders from blacklist senders per user list

Adding Senders to Blacklist Per User

You can add senders to blacklist in the following ways:

- Manually adding the senders
- Importing senders from a CSV file
- Adding senders from Blacklist requests from users

Manually adding the senders

The administrator can manually specify the senders to be whitelisted for specific recipients, one-by-one to be added.

To manually add senders to blacklist per user basis

• Click 'Add' to add a new sender to the list. The 'Add sender' dialog box will be displayed:

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

acklist send	lers per user			0
🗕 Add <u>च</u> Delete	import from CSV file]		Refre
Fiters				
] Sender			Recipient	
] demo1@csg.comodo	.od.ua		john	
Add sender		999999999999 999999999999	×	Per page 15
Sender:	devil	@ [h	ell.com	
Recipient:	bob	00	octeamcasg.comodo.od.ua	

- Enter the sender's username in the E-mail textbox and sender's email domain name after the @ symbol in the first row.
- Enter the recipient's name in the Recipient text box in the second row. Note: The recipient should be a valid user.
- Click the 'Save' button. Repeat the process to add more blacklisted senders for the user.

The list of blacklisted senders will be displayed.

Blacklist senders per user	0 не
Add Delete Delete	Refres
S Filters	
Sender *	Recipient
Sender devil@hell.com	Recipient
Sender Sender devil@hell.com demo1@csg.comodo.od.ua	Recipient bob john

Importing senders from a CSV file

Administrators can import a multiple senders at a time from a comma separated values (CSV) file to Sender blacklist per user. The list of blacklisted senders and respective recipients can be created using notepad or a speadsheet application like MS Excel or OpenOffice Calc and saved in .csv format. Each line in the .csv file should contain the sender's email address and the username of the recipient or sender's email address and the recipient's email address, separated by a comma. An example is shown below:



sender1@anydomain.com, recipient1

sender2@anydomain.com, recipient2@domain.com

sender3@somedomain.com, recipient3

•

To import senders to Blacklist from CSV file

Click the 'Import from CSV file' from the 'Blacklist senders per user' interface. The 'Upload' dialog will appear.

Dashboard /	<u>Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.</u>	comodo.od.ua / Blacklist senders per use	r
Blacklis	st senders per user		🕑 Help
Add Delete import from CSV file			Refresh
Filters	T		
Sender		Recipient	
🔲 devil@he	ell.com	bob	
🗾 demo1@	csg.comodz.od.ua	john	
5 at at 1	Upload		Per page 15
	Upload csv file. Each line should contain two columns For example:	: sender,username	
	sender@anydomain.com, recipient		
	sender@anydomain.com, recipient@	domain.com	
		pload	

• Click 'Upload', navigate to the location where the .csv file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The maximum size of the file that can be uploaded is 9 MB.

The upload will be placed in import tasks queue and the progress of the upload will be displayed. If you want to remove the upload from the queue, click the 'Remove import task' button. The 'Remove import task' deletes only a remaining part of not imported task.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.u	a / Blacklist senders per user
Blacklist senders per user	Help
Import is in process. Please wait	×
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🗶 Cancel import from CSV file	Refresh
S Filters	
Sender 🔺	Recipient
devil@hell.com	bob
🔲 demo1@csg.comodo.od.ua	john
i≪ ≪ 1 /1 ► ► [1-2/2]	Per page 15 💌

On completion of the upload process, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.	ua / Blacklist senders per user
Blacklist senders per user	Help
Total lines processed 3	
Imported 3 senders as blacklisted	
Import for domain docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been finis	hed 🛛
Add Delete Import from CSV file	Refresh
Filters	
Sender 🔺	Recipient
🗐 judas@betrayal.com	john
🔲 devil@hell.com	bob
🔲 demo1@csg.comodo.od.ua	john
🔲 brutus@treason.com	john
🗐 bluto@ironcastle.com	bob
[◀ ◀ 1 /1 ▶ ▶ [1-5/5]	Per page 15 🗸

The sender blacklist per user from .csv file will be uploaded and the administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Adding senders from Blacklist requests from users

The administrator can add senders to blacklist based on the requests of the users. Refer to the section **Email Management** > **Blacklisted Requests** for more details.

Deleting Senders from Blacklist

• To delete a sender from the blacklist, select the sender from the list and click the 'Delete' button.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.	ua / Blacklist senders per user
Blacklist senders per user	Help
Add Delete 📾 Import from CSV file	Refresh
S Filters	
Sender 🔺	Recipient
✓ judas@betrayalcom	john
✓ devil@hell.com	bob
🕅 demo1@csg.co <mark>modo.od.ua</mark>	john
🕅 brutus@treasor.com	john
Remove senders Are you sure you want to remove selected Senders? OK Cancel	×

• Click 'OK' in the confirmation dialog.

3.2.1.1.4.7 Account Management

In the Account Management interface, an administrator can manage the users for the selected domain. From this interface, you can reset passwords for users, allow or deny permission for users to access their account, can import CSV file containing the list of users, import users from your the Active Directory (AD) server of the domain through Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), add and move your aliases. In the Users history interface, an administrator can view users login history. Refer to **User History** for more details.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



Click the following links for more details:

- Users
- User auto-import
- Users history
- Importing Users from LDAP

3.2.1.1.4.7.1 User Account Management

The 'Users' area allows administrators with appropriate privileges to manage users for the selected domain. This includes adding/importing users, deleting users, editing user accounts, resetting passwords and configuring user permissions. Admins can also configure email aliases from this interface.

Click the following links for more details:

- Managing Users
- Adding New Users
- Deleting Users
- Editing Users
- Unlocking Users



- Importing from CSV file
- Managing Permissions
- Aliases
- Moving to Aliases
- Importing Aliases from CSV file
- Forwarding mails to another user
- Other actions

Managing Users

• Click 'Account management' on the left then click 'Users':



The 'Users' interface of the selected domain will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Domains / Dom	ain dashboard - docteamcaso	comodo.od.ua / Users			
Users					Help
+ Add 🗇 Delete	/ Edit 🔂 Unlock	More actions 🗸			Refresh
Filters					
Username *	Enabled	Last login	Aliases	Group	Forward to
E bob	Yes	2015-06-29 08:24:00		Power Users	
🔲 john	Yes	2015-06-29 11:32:54		Users	
🔄 alice	Yes			Users	
14 4 1 1 1	▶ ▶ [1-2/2]				Per page 15 🗸

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column. The sorting option is not available for 'Aliases and Group' columns.

Using the filter option to search users

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

User	S						🕑 Help
🕂 Add	d 🗍 Delete	D Edit	C Unlock	More actions 🗸	Ì		Refresh
🔿 Filt	ers						
🕂 Us	ername	v c	contains	•			Apply filter
I Use	mame +	Enabled		* Last Ionia	Allases	Group	Forward to
			- -				
ou can	add more filt	ers by c	licking 🔽	for narrowing	down your search.		
Dashboar	d / Domains / Dom	ain dashboa	rd - docteamcas	<u>g.comodo.od.ua</u> / Use	rs		
1							
ICOR	-						0
Users	S						P Help
+ Add	S 🗊 Delete	🥒 Edit	🔒 Unlock	More actions 🗸]		Help Refresh
+ Add	S 1 🗊 Delete	Ø Edit	Unlock	More actions 💙			PHelp
+ Add	Delete	/ Edit	C Unlock	More actions 🗸			Refresh
+ Add	B Delete	/ Edit	Unlock	More actions 🗸			Help Refresh Apply filter
+ Add Filter Us = 0	S Delete	Cedit	Onlock ontains	More actions V			Refresh
+ Add Filte Us Users Users Us Us Us	Contraction Contra	C Edit	Unlock ontains quals	More actions V			Refresh
+ Add Filter Us Us Us	Contraction of the service of the se	C C C	Onlock ontains equals	More actions V	Aliases	Group	Help Refresh Apply filter Forward to
+ Add Filte Us Filte La La Add Add Add Add Add Add	B Delete ers ername ablec sername nabled ast login ias username	Contemporation Contem	Unlock ontains quals	More actions V	Aliases 24:00	Group Power Users	Help Refresh Apply filter Forward to
+ Add Filter + Us - In C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	C Delete crs emame ablec sername nabled ast login ias username ias domain oward to	C C	Ontains	More actions ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	Aliases 24:00 32:54	Group Power Users Users	Help Refresh Apply filter Forward to
+ Add	Comparison of the service of the ser	C Edit	Ontains equals	More actions ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	Aliases 24:00 32:54	Group Power Users Users Users	Help Refresh Apply filter Forward to

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

• Username: Will execute a search of usernames according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Username' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all usernames that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all users except the one entered in the text box.
- **Contains**: Displays all username(s) that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all username(s) that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all username(s) that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the username(s) that end with the words entered in the text box.

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

Enabled: Sorts the results based on whether a user is enabled or disabled.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, 'equals' is the only option available in the second drop-down:

- Equals: Displays the results of enabled users when the checkbox beside it is selected. When the checkbox is not selected, it displays the list of users who are not enabled.
- Last Login: Sorts the results based on the last login details of users.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, the following filters are available:

- Equals: Displays the list of users whose last login date is the same as the selected date in the third box from the calendar.
- Less than: Displays the list of users whose last login date is less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar.
- **Greater than:** Displays the list of users whose last login date is greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar.
- Alias username: Will execute a search of user alias name according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, the following filters are available:

- **Contains:** Displays all users with alias name(s) that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Equals: Displays all users with alias names that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all users except those with the alias name entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all user alias name(s) that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all user alias name(s) that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the user alias name(s) that end with the words entered in the text box.
- Alias Domain: Will execute a search of domain alias name according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, the following filters are available:

- **Contains:** Displays all users with domain alias name(s) that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Equals: Displays all users with domain alias names that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all users except those with the domain alias name entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all user domain alias name(s) that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all user domain alias name(s) that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the user domain alias name(s) that end with the words entered in the text box.
- Forward to: Will execute a search of forwarded to user names according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, the following filters are available:

- Equals: Displays all usernames that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all users except the one entered in the text box.

- Contains: Displays all username(s) that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all username(s) that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all username(s) that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the username(s) that end with the words entered in the text box.
- **Group**: Will execute a search of users belonging to the user group selected from the drop-down in the third column and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, the following filters are available:

- **Equals**: Displays all users from the group selected from the third drop-down.
- Not Equals: Displays all the users excluding those belonging to the group selected from the third dropdown.

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the Click

Note: To display all the users after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

To add a new user

• Click the 'Add' button.

Dashboard / Domains / Dom	ain dashboard - docteamcaso o	omodo.od.ua / Users		
Users				🕜 Help
+ Add T Delete	/ Edit 🔒 Unlock	More actions 🗸		🔁 Refresh
S Filters				
🔄 Username 🔶	Enabled *	Last login * Aliases	Group	Forward to
🕅 alice	Yes		Users	
🛅 bob	Yes	2015-06-29 08:24:00	Power Users	john@docteamcasg.como
🖭 john	Yes			

The 'New user' dialog will be displayed:

New user	×
Username	@ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
Enabled	Whitelist this email 🛛 Send quarantine reports 🖾 Send invitation
	Save Cancel

• Enter the username of a new user that will be first part of the email address. For example, 'alice'. The email address of the added user will be 'alice@domainname.com'.

By default, the user will be enabled. Uncheck the checkbox beside 'Enabled' to deny the new user access to CASG. You can

enable the user in the Edit user interface later on.

You can choose to add the new user to **Recipient Whitelist** from this interface itself. Select the checkbox beside the 'Whitelist email' to add the user to **Recipient Whitelist**.

The administrators can also determine whether the users will get the reports or not. By default, it is enabled.

- Uncheck 'Send quarantine reports' box to disable this option.
- Click the 'Save' button.

Checking 'Send invitation' box will send the invitation mail to the email recipient address entered in the 'Username' text box.

Note: If the user is disabled and subscribed for periodical Quarantine Reports, the subscription will also be canceled.

An email to the added user will be sent automatically containing password to access CASG. The password can be reset in the **edit interface**. The added user will be displayed in the list.

Dashboard / Domains / I	Domain dashboard - docteam	icaso comodo.od.ua / Users			
Users					Help
+ Add Delet	e 🖉 Edit 🔂 Unloi	ok More actions 🗸			Refresh
Filters					
📄 Username	* Enabled	* Last login	 Aliases 	Group	Forward to
alice	Yes			Users	
🔄 bob	Yes	2015-06-29 08:24:00		Power Users	john@docteamcasg.como
📳 john	Yes	2015-06-29 11:32:54		Users	
henry	Yes			Users	
14 4 1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-3/3]				Per page 15 🗸

Note: The number of users that can be added depends on the plan subscribed by you and the maximum number of users limit configured for the domain in the Add Domains / Edit Domains / Domain Settings interfaces. When you exceed the limit of users, the following will be displayed while adding a new user.



To delete an existing user

• Select the user you want to delete from the list and click the 'Delete' button

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Users				Help
+ Add T Delete	Edit 🔂 Unlock	More actions 🗸		Refresh
S Filters				
🔄 Username	* Enabled	* Last login * /	Aliases Grou	p Forward to *
🔳 alicy	Yes		Users	j.
🔲 b/b	Yes	2015-06-29 08:24:00	Powe	r Users john@docteamcasg.como
john	Yes	2015-06-29 11:32:54	Users	1
enry	Yes		Users	
14 4 1 /1	▶ ▶ [1-3/3]			Per page 15 🗸

• Click 'OK' to confirm your changes.



The user(s) will be removed from the list.

To edit an existing user

You can select to allow or deny permission for the users to access their CASG account in the edit interface as well as enable or disable quarantine report generation for the user.

• Select the user you want to edit from the list and click the 'Edit' button.

Dashboard / Domains /	Domain dashboard - docter	amcasa comodo od un / Users		
Users				Help
+ Add 🗊 Delet		ock More actions 🗸		Refresh
S Filters	1			
🔄 Username	* Enabled	* Last login * Aliases	Group	Forward to
I alice	Yes		Users	
E bob	Yes	2015-06-29 08:24:00	Power Users	john@docteamcasg.como
🖾 jom	Yes	2015-06-29 11:32:54	Users	
enry	Yes		Users	
	▶ ▶ [1-3/3]			Per page 15 🗸

The 'Edit user' dialog box will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Edit user henry	y@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	×
Username		
henry	@ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	
Enabled	☑ Whitelist this email Send quarantine reports	
	Save Cancel	

- Enabled Select the checkbox to allow or deny access to the CASG interface.
- Whitelist email Select this checkbox to add the user to Recipient Whitelist.
- Disable 'Send quarantine reports' checkbox, if you do not want the user to get quarantine reports. By default it is enabled.
- Click the 'Save' button to confirm your changes.

Note: If the user is disabled and if the user has subscribed for periodical Quarantine Reports, the subscription will be canceled.

To unlock users

Users who try to login to CASG with wrong credentials will be automatically locked after three unsuccessful attempts. They will be able to try again only after 30 minutes from the time of lockout. CASG administrators can unlock these users immediately without waiting for the timeout period to end, so that the users can try to login again to CASG.

The locked out users will be displayed with a lock icon beside them.

Dashboard / Domains / Doma	in dashboard - docteamcaso.co	omodo.od.ua / Users			
Users					🕜 Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete	/ Edit 🔂 Unlock	More actions 🗸			Refresh
S Filters					
🔲 Usernam 🔹 ^	Enabled *	Last login *	Aliases	Group	Forward to
🖾 ali e	Yes			Users	
🗹 🖷 bob	No	2015-06-30 10:17:29		Power Users	
🖾 henry	No			Users	
🛅 john	Yes	2015-06-30 10:27:45		Users	
I∉ ∉ [1 _/1[INF [1-4/4]				Per page 15 🗸

Select the locked user from the list and click the 'Unlock' button.

A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

•



• Click 'OK' to unlock the selected locked user.

The user now can try to login again without waiting for the lockout time period to end.

To import users from CSV file

You can add many new users at a time by importing from a file. The users should be saved in 'comma separated value' (CSV) as shown below:

username1,domainname,true username2,domainname,false

• To import new users from a CSV file click More actions > Import from CSV file

Jsers				0	Help
🕂 Add 🗊 Delete 🥒 Edit 🔒 Unlock	More actions			Refr	resh
Filters	Enable				
	Enable by filter				
Username * Enabled	Send invitation	Aliases	Group	Forward to	
I alice Yes			Users		
💽 bob No	Regenerate password		Power Users		
henry No	Manage permissions		Users		
🗂 john Yes	Alases		Users		
∉ ∉ 1 /1 ⊳ ⇒ [1-4/4]	Move to aliases			Per page 15	~
	Forward to				
	Import alias from CSV file				

The Upload dialog will be displayed.

Upload ×
Upload csv file. Each line should contain three columns: username,domain,is user enabled or not
For example:
testuser, testdomain, true
Upload

• Click the 'Upload' button and navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button. The upload progress will be displayed...

2 H					Users
			ease wait	n process. Ple	Import is i
Refres	More actions 🗸	C Unlock	/ Edit	Delete	- Add

...and when completed, the results will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Doma	in dashboard - docteamcaso co	omodo.od.ua / Users			
Users					🕑 Help
Imported 1 user(s)					
1 users already exist					
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete	🖉 Edit 🔒 Unlock 🚺	More actions 🗸			Refresh
S Filters					
🔄 Username 🔹	Enabled *	Last login 🔺	Aliases	Group	Forward to
🔝 alice	Yes			Users	
🔄 bob	Yes	2015-06-30 10:17:29		Power Users	
m henry	No			Users	
📄 john	Yes	2015-06-30 10:27:45		Users	
🔄 jsmith	No			Users	
∈	[1-5/5]				Per page 15 🗸

The administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.

Note: The number of users that can be configured for the domain in the Add De after the number of users allowed for th	added depends or omains / Edit Dor e account is reach	n the plan subscribe mains / Domain Se led and a warning w	ed by you and the maximu ttings interface. CASG w rill be displayed.	Im number of users limit ill stop importing users
Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamca	<u>so comodo od ua</u> / Users			
Users				🕜 Help
Imported 1 user(s)				
You cannot add more users as you have reached	your maximum number	r of allowed users by licen	se limitation, 1 users were import	ed 🛛
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🖉 Edit 🔂 Unlock	More actions 💙			Refresh
S Filters				
Username * Enabled	1 Last login	^ Aliases	Group	Forward to

Managing Permissions for users

CASG allow administrators to assign permissions for users that will determine what the users can do and cannot do while logged into their respective CASG user interface. The administrators can create policies and assign them to users from this

interface. See the section 'User Groups & Permissions' for more details on how to create groups and policies. A new user will be automatically assigned default permission settings.

To assign permissions for a user

• Select the user(s) that you want assign permissions and click More actions > Manage permissions

Dashboard / Domains / D	omain dashboard - docteamcas	<u>a comodo od ua</u> / Users			
Users					🕑 Help
+ Add 🛱 Delete	e 🖉 Edit 🔒 Unlock	More actions			Refresh
Filters		Enable			
		Enable by fitter	-		
🕅 Username	* Enabled	Send invitation	Aliases	Group	Forward to
E alice	Yes			Users	
🖻 bob	Yes	Regenerate password		Power Users	
V henry	Yes	Manage permissions		Users	
🛅 john	Yes	Alases		Users	
≪ ≪ 1 /1	I [1-4/4]	Move to allases			Per page 15 🗸
		Forward to			
		Import alias from CSV file			
		Import from CSV file			

The 'User Groups & permissions' interface will be displayed.

User groups & permissions	×		
🕂 Add 🖉 Edit 🛱 Delete 🖏 Make defau	It		
Name	Permission:		
Power Users	All user permissions		
 Users (Default) 			
© HR			
Assign to selected users As	sign to filtered users Cancel		

The interface displays the list of groups available with same or different permission levels for each group. By default, 'User

(Default) and 'Power User' groups will be available and administrators can add, edit groups and assign permissions to users. See the section 'Groups & Permissions' for more details.

• Select the group from the list.



The permissions set for this group will be displayed on the right side.

- Click the 'Assign to selected users' button to set permissions for selected user or multiple users.
- Click 'Assign to filtered users' button to set permissions for selected group to all users or to all users found by filter.
- Click Ok in the confirmation window.



The selected user(s) will be assigned to the group and successfully assigned message will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Jsers					🕜 Help
Permissions successful	y assigned to 2 user(s).				6
🕂 Add 🗑 Delete	/ Edit 🔒 Unlock	More actions 🗸			Refresh
Filters					
E Usersens	Enabled *	Last login ^	Aliases	Group	Forward to
C username					
alice	Yes			Users	
alice	Yes	2015-06-30 10:17:29		Users Power Users	
alice bob henry	Yes Yes Yes	2015-06-30 10:17:29		Users Power Users HR	
obsername alice bob henry john	Yes Yes Yes Yes	2015-06-30 10:17:29 2015-06-30 10:27:45		Users Power Users HR HR	

The interface also displays the new group assigned for the selected user under the 'Group' column.

Adding the user aliases

CASG allows admins to add a user alias name to organize emails related to different groups or functions into a single email inbox automatically. The users can protect their real email address.

 Select a user and click 'More actions' > 'Aliases' to add user aliases

Dashboard / Domains / Dor	nain dashboard - docteamcas	a comodo od ua / Users					
Users						0	Help
+ Add Delete	/ Edit 🔂 Unlock	More actions 🗸			0	Refr	resh
Filters	han an the second b	Enable					
-		Enable by filter					
🔄 Username	Enabled	Send invitation	Aliases	Group	Forward to		
🕅 alice	Yes			Users			
🔄 bob	Yes	Regenerate password		Power Users			
V henry	Yes	Manage permissions		HR			
🕅 john	Yes	Aliases		HR			
l∉ ∉ <mark>1</mark> /1	▶ ▶ [1-4/4]	Move to aliases			Per page	15	~
		Forward to					
		Import alias from CSV file					
		Import from CSV file					

• Enter the full email alias address of the user. Note: The alias email address must be of any domain belonging to the account.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

User Aliases	x
🕂 Add alias	
stores@democasg.comodo.od.ua	
Save Cancel	

Click the Save button.

Note: Users cannot add an alias by themselves.

- To add multiple aliases click the 🔽 button.
- To remove an added alias row click the 💻 icon beside it.

After adding a user to an alias, admins can extract him/her as a user.

• Click the 'Aliases' button after selecting the user.

In the 'User Aliases' dialog next to the added alias row, the 'Extract as user' button will be displayed.

User /	liases	×
+	\dd alias	
-	stores@democasg.comodo.od.ua	Extract as user
	Save Cancel	

• Click the 'Extract as user' button.

The alias successfully moved message will be displayed.

Success X
Alias was successfully moved to user
ок

Click 'OK'

The user extracted from the 'User Aliases' dialog box will be added to list of users in the respective domain added as alias and will be placed in the default group.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Contractory a contactory of	7				
Users					🕜 Help
+ Add 🗊 Delete	🖉 🖉 Ent 🔂 Unlock 📗	More actions 🗸			Refresh
S Filters					
Username	* Enabled *	Last login	Aliases	Group	Forward to
📰 stores	Yes			Users	
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1				

Note: The number of users that can be added for an account depends on the plan subscribed by you. When you exceed the limit of users, a warning will be displayed.

Moving user account to aliases

CASG allows admins to move an existing user as an alias for another user for any domain available in your account.

• Select the user that has to be moved as an alias and then click 'More actions' > 'Move to aliases'

Users						0	Help
🕂 Add <u> </u> Delete	/ Edit 🔒 Unlock	More actions 🗸			•	Re	fresh
S Filters		Enable					
		Enable by filter					
Username * Enabled		Send invitation	Aliases	Group	Forward to		^
V alice	Yes			Users			
🛅 bob	Yes	Regenerate password		Power Users			
🛅 henry	Yes	Manage permissions		HR			
🛅 john	Yes	Alases		HR			
	▶ [1-4/4]	Move to alases			Per pag	15	~
		Forward to					
		Import alias from CSV file					
		import from CSV file					

• Type the full email address of the user for whom the alias has to be added. Note: The user and domain should be valid and belong to your account.

User Aliase	es	×					
store	stores@democasg.comodo.od.ua						
	Save Cancel						

• Click the 'Save' button.

Now, the selected user has become an alias of another user. (This could be for the same domain or another domain belonging

to your account.)

Users					🕑 Help
🖶 Add 🗊 Delete	/ Edit 🔂 Unlock	More actions			Refresh
Filters					
 Filters Username 	Enabled	^ Last login	^ Aliases	Group	Forward to

Importing alias from CSV file

You can add many aliases to existing user(s) at a time for the selected domain and / or for other domains available for your account by importing from a file. The aliases should be saved in 'comma separated value' (CSV) as shown below:

Example 1

The following example shows how you can add alias for two users for the selected domain.

alias@domain.com username1, username2

Example 2

The following example shows how you can add alias for users for the selected domain and other domains available for your account.

alias@domain.com username1, username2, username3@domain2

Please note that for adding many aliases at a time, each alias should be separated by a paragraph line. For example:

alias1@domain.com username1, username2 alias2@domain.com username1, username2, username3@domain2

Click 'More actions' > 'Import alias from CSV file' to assign alias for users from a CSV file.

Jsers				🕜 Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🥒 Edit 🔒 Unlock	More actions			Refresh
S Filters	Enable			
	Enable by filter			
Username * Enabled	Send invitation	Aliases	Group	Forward to
🔄 bob Yes			Power Users	
henry Yes			HR	
🛅 john Yes	Manage permissions		HR	
∉ ∉ 1/1 ⊳ ⊳ [1-3/3]	Aliases			Per page 15 👻
	Move to aliases			
	Forward to			
	Import alias from CSV file			
	Import from CSV file			



The Upload dialog will be displayed.

Upload X
Upload csv file. Each line should be in the next format: alias [csv user list],
For example
alias@testdomain user1, user2@domain2
When domain name is not mentioned - user will be added to the current domain to alias name When such user does not exists - user will be created
Upload

• Click the 'Upload' button and navigate to the location where the file is saved and click the 'Open' button.

The upload progress will be displayed...

Dashboard / Domains /	Oomain dashboard - doc	teamcaso.comodo.od.ua / Users				
Users	Jsers					
Import is in process	s. Please wait				×	
+ Add 🗑 Del	ete 🥒 Edit 🔂 U	Inlock More actions 💙			Refresh	
Filters						
🔄 Username	* Enabled	^ Last login	* Aliases	Group	Forward to	

Dashboard / Domains / D	omain dashboa	ird - docteamcas	sa con	<u>modo.od.us</u> / Users					
Users									🕜 Help
Total lines processed	1								
Import for domain doc	teamcasg.co	modo.od.ua h	as be	en finished					
1 users already exist									×
Add Delete	/ Edit	Unlock	M	ore actions 🗸					Refresh
S Filters									
📄 Username	* Enabled		•	Last login	*	Aliases	Group	Forward	f to 🔶
🛅 bob	Yes			2015-06-30 10:17:29		jenny@docteamo	asg.com Power Users		

...and when completed, the results will be displayed.

The administrator who carried out the task will receive a notification about the import task completion.
Forwarding mails to another user

CASG allows administrators to add a forwarding address for a user. This is useful when a user is on vacation or unavailable for sometime but the mails addressed to him should be attended immediately. Please note the forwarded user should also be in the same domain.

• Select the user whose mails have to be forwarded to another user and then click 'More actions' > 'Forward to'

Dashboard / Domains / Dor	nain dashboard - docteamcas	o.comodo.od.ua / Users			
Users					Help
+ Add 🗑 Delete	/ Edit 🔒 Unlock	More actions 🗸			Refresh
Filters		Enable			
0		Enable by filter			
🖑 Username	Enabled	Send invitation	Aliases	Group	Forward to
V bob	Yes			Power Users	
m henry	Yes	Regenerate password		HR	
🔄 john	Yes	Manage permissions		HR	
	▶ ⊪ [1-3/3]	Alases			Per page 15 🗸
		Move to allases			
	(Forward to			
		Import alias from CSV file			
		Import from CSV file			

The 'Forward settings...' dialog will be displayed:

Forward settings for bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od	l.ua 🗙
Enable forwarding:	
Forward all user messages to:	@ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
Save	Cancel

- Select the 'Enable forwarding' check box
- Enter the user name of the recipient to whom the mails have to be forwarded in the 'Forward all user messages to' field
- Click the 'Save' button

The forwarded user will be added and a success message will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Users					🕜 Help
Successfully saved					
+ Add 🗑 Delete	🖉 Edit 🔂 Unlock 🌅	More actions 🗸			Refresh
C Citara					
g ritters					
Username	Enabled *	Last login	Aliases	Group	Forward to *
Username ^	Enabled *	Last login * 2015-06-30 10:17:29	Aliases	Group Power Users	Forward to
Username •	Enabled * Yes Yes	Last login ^ 2015-06-30 10:17:29	Aliases	Group Power Users HR	Forward to *
Username bob henry john	Enabled * Yes Yes Yes	Last login * 2015-06-30 10:17:29 2015-06-30 10:27:45	Aliases	Group Power Users HR HR	Forward to *

The incoming mails of the selected user will be automatically forwarded to the added user in the domain. When the selected user logs in to his/her CASG account, an alert will be displayed at the top of the interface.

Please note that all incoming messages are automatically forwarded to henry@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua				
COMODO Antispam Gateway		L My Account		
de incoming v	Quarantine	🕑 Help		
ALINE	🚯 Show message 🛱 Delete 🛱 Delete at Murr entropy	🕒 Retesh		

To remove the forwarded mail address for a user, select the user, click 'More actions' > 'Forward to'

The 'Forward settings...' dialog will be displayed:

Forward settings for bob@docteamcasg.comodo.od	.ua 🗙
Enable forwarding:	
Forward all user messages to:	henry @ docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua
Save	Cancel

- Deselect the 'Enable forwarding' check box
- Delete the username in the 'Forward all user messages to' field
- Click the 'Save' button

The forwarded user will be removed and a success message will be displayed.

Other Actions

- To allow user to access to CASG interface, click the 'More actions' > 'Enable'. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.
- If you want to allow access to user selected by applying filter, apply filters and click 'More actions' > 'Enable by filter'. A
 confirmation dialog will be displayed.
- Click the 'More actions' and select the 'Regenerate password'. The password will be reset for the user in case it is
 forgotten. The new password will be sent to the user's email automatically. The user has to use this new password to



access CASG. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

 To send invitation to new created users, select users and click 'More actions' > 'Send invitation'. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

3.2.1.1.4.7.2 Managing User auto-import

CASG has the ability to automatically import new users belonging to the managed domain, upon receiving the first accepted incoming mail, addressed to the new user at the mail server.

The administrator can enable the auto-import feature and configure it from the 'User auto-import' interface.

Each new user discovered, will be auto-imported in 30 minutes and will be sent with an invitation mail containing an activation link and credentials for their CASG user account. The new users need to activate their CASG User account by clicking the link in the invitation mail or logging-in to CASG User interface using the credentials provided in the mails. The administrators will also get a notification mail whenever a new user is auto-imported into CASG, if configured.

To access the Users Auto-Import interface

Select 'Account management' from the left hand side navigation to expand it and choose 'Users auto-import' from the
options



The 'Users auto-import' interface of the selected domain will be displayed.

 Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Users auto-import

 Image: Comparison of the second s

- Enable auto-import Select this option to enable the auto-import feature.
- Automatically enable imported users Select this option, If you wish all the auto-imported new users to be 'Enabled' and their accounts with CASG are to be automatically activated, without them having to login to CASG user interface.
- Send invitation to imported users Sends invitation mails to newly imported users. The mail will contain the activation link and their login credentials.
- Notify administrators about imported users Select this option if the administrator are to be notified whenever a new user is auto imported. You can specify administrators (including self) to whom the notification mails are to be sent in the 'Notification recipients' textbox. The notification contains the imported user name and a domain name.
- Notification recipients Enter the email addresses of the administrators to whom the notification emails are to be sent. You can enter multiple address, separated by commas.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasq.comodo.od.ua / Users auto-import					
Users auto-import					
 ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ Notification recipients: 	Enable auto-import Automatically enable imported users Send invitation to imported users Notify administrators about imported users demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua				
Sav	/e				

Click the 'Save' button for your settings to take effect.

Successfully saved

3.2.1.1.4.7.3 Viewing User History

The 'Users History' area contains a record of user account connections within a particular date range. You can filter users by IP address, last login, domain, username and/or location.

Note: This interface will show user connections to the current domain only (the domain that is shown near the top of the interface). If required, you can view user connections for all domains in the 'Account Management section' (click 'Dashboard' then in the 'Account Management' section, click 'User's History' sub tab).

The remainder of this page explains how to access the history interface and how to use filters to create custom searches.

Accessing the user history interface

Click the 'Account management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Users history' sub tab.



The 'Users history' interface of the selected domain will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain	dashboard - docteamcaso como	do.od.ua / Users history			
Users history					🕑 Help
Filters					
Username *	Domain	IP *	Location *	Last login ^	Login duration (min)
bob	docteamcasg.comodo.od.u	125.17.11.121	India	2015-06-29 08:24:00	Currently logged in
bob	docteamcasg.comodo.od.u	125.17.11.121	India	2015-06-29 08:22:03	<1
john	docteamcasg.comodo.od.u	125.17.11.121	India	2015-06-26 07:36:41	25
john	docteamcasg.comodo.od.u	125.17.11.121	India	2015-06-26 05:57:04	1
	docteamcasg comodo od u	125 17 11 121	India	2015-06-26 05 17:08	38

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column. The sorting option is not available for 'Login duration' column.

Using the filter option to search users

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / Users history						
Users history	/				😮 Help	
S Filters						
🕂 Username	 ✓ contains 	•			Apply filter	
Username	* Domain	* IP	* Location	* Last login	* Login duration (min)	
bob	docteamcasg comod	o od.u - 125 17.11 121	India	2015-06-29 08:24:00	Currently logged in	

You can add more filters by clicking 🔽 for narrowing down your search.

Dash	ooard / Domains / Do	omain dasht	opard - docteamcaso como	do.od.ua / Users history			
Use	ers history	'					🕑 Help
0	Filtera						
+	Username	*	contains	•			Apply filter
-	Username	~	contains	•			
	Username						
User	Domain		nain 🔶	IP *	Location	Last login *	Login duration (min)
bob	Location		eamcasg.comodo.od.u	125.17.11.121	India	2015-06-29 08:24:00	Currently logged in
bob	Last login		eamcasg.comodo.od.u	125.17.11.121	India	2015-06-29 08:22:03	<1

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- Username: Will execute a search of usernames according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Domain:** Will execute a search of domains according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- IP: Will execute a search of IP addresses according to the number in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Location: Will execute a search of locations according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If any of the above options is selected in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all entries that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all entries except the one entered in the text box.
- Contains: Displays all entries that contain the words entered in the text box.

- Not Contains: Displays all entries that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- **Starts With**: Displays all entries that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all entries that end with the words entered in the text box.

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

Last Login: Sorts the results based on the last login details of users.

If 'Last Login' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays the users whose last login is same as the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Less than: Displays the users whose last login dates are less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Greater than: Displays the users whose last login dates are greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the Click

Note: To display all the users after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

3.2.1.1.4.7.4 Importing Users from LDAP

In addition to adding users manually and importing users from CSV file, CASG enables the administrators to import the users from the Active Directory (AD) server of the domain. You can configure CASG to access your AD server through Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) to import the email users and to periodically synchronize with the AD server for automatic addition or removal of the users based on the changes made to the AD server.

Click the following links for more details:

- LDAP Import Configuration
- LDAP Import Confirmation List
- LDAP Import Ignore List
- Troubleshooting LDAP

LDAP Import Configuration

The LDAP Import Configuration interface allows the administrators to configure CASG to import the email users from the Domains's Active Directory and to set for periodical synchronization. Once Active Directory has been configured, CASG imports the users into its interface and updates it periodically. For example if a new user is added in the Active Directory, CASG can automatically add the new user to CASG.

Accessing the LDAP import configuration interface

- Open the 'Domains' interface and select the domain into which you want to import users.
- Select the domain from the list, click the 'Manage Domain' button to open the 'Domain Management' interface.
- Click 'Account management' tab > 'LDAP import configuration' sub tab.

Comodo strongly recommends that a separate LDAP/AD account be created for the purposes of the ASG login and that this user account should be allocated read-only permissions.

The 'LDAP import configuration' interface will be displayed:



LDAP import configuration	nodo.od.ua / LDAP import configuration 2 He	elp
Connection settings		
Host (IP address or name): Port: LDAP(389) LDAPS(636) Use SSL to connect?:	11.111.111.11 389	
Login/Query settings		
LDAP login name: Password: Synchronization interval: BaseDN: Filter: Mail attribute: Override existing records	casguser@domain.com ••••• Image: Comparison of the second	
Information		
Send reports: Last synchronization time (GMT):	Ves	
Те	st connection Save and run synchronization now Save	

Connection Settings

- Host (IP Address or Name) Enter the external hostname or external IP address of the AD server. If your
 Organization uses the same physical server for AD server and the Mail Exchange server, then enter the host name or
 IP address of the mail server.
- **Port** Enter the port number of Active Directory Server's LDAP port.
 - 389 is the default port for non-SSL connection ('Use SSL To Connect' box NOT checked)
 - 636 is the default port if SSL connection is active ('Use SSL To Connect' box checked)
- Use SSL To Connect? Select the 'Yes' check box if you wish us to use secure LDAP. In order to use secure LDAP, you need to install an SSL certificate from a Certification Authority (CA) like Comodo CA in your AD server. Self Signed certificates are not allowed.

Note: SSL access should have been enabled for AD Server before opting for SSL usage.

Login/Query Settings

- LDAP login name: Enter the username of the user account using which CASG server can access the AD server. Preferably, a new user account can be created for the CASG server in the AD server with a new user name and password. The User account should have 'read' privileges to the AD server. The username can be of the format 'username' or 'username@domainname.com'
- **Password** Enter the password of the LDAP user account.
- **Remember Credentials** Enable this option if you wish CASG server to remember the username/password of the user account, in order to automatically login.

Note: If you are configuring for automatic periodic synchronization, CASG will store the username and password by default to connect to the AD server at the set time interval to update the user base, hence the option 'Remember Credentials' will not be visible. The option will be visible for you to enable or disable if 'Synchronization Interval' setting is set as 'no auto updates'.

- **Synchronization interval** If you wish to configure CASG to automatically connect to the AD server and synchronize the user base, select the time interval for synchronization from the drop-down. Else, select 'No auto updates'.
- **BaseDN** Distinguished Name of the user object in Active Directory. By default, the BaseDN field will contain the Domain Component (DC) values based on the domain name for which LDAP is configured. You can add/change the values of the strings 'Container Name (CN)', 'Organizational Unit (OU)' and 'domain name' depending on the users to be imported from the Active Directory.

Example: For adding users from Container 'Users', Organizational unit 'Organization' and domain 'example.com', the administrator has to enter the following:

CN=Users, OU = Organization, DC=example, DC=com

• Filter - Enables the Administrator to specify filter parameters users/addresses to be imported from the AD server. Each filter parameter should be defined within parentheses. Common filter parameters are explained below:

(objectClass=<AD user type>) - Specifies the user accounts to look for from the domain's Active Directory. (Default = (objectClass=User))

(mail=*<domain name>) - Instructs CASG to import only the users that have a defined SMTP account within the domain. By default, the filter is pre-added with the parameter (mail=*@<current domain name>) to import the users that have email addresses on the current domain.

You can add any number of (mail=) filters if you wish to add several domain names

Example: (mail=*@domainname1.com)(mail=*@domainname2.com)

To import all email enabled users from the Active Directory irrespective of any specific domain name, enter the parameter as '(mail=*)'.

To modify a filter parameter to be exclusive rather than inclusive, add an exclamation mark (!) before the opening parenthesis of any parameter. This will instruct the query to ignore any users which fall into that category. For example, if one wanted to configure a query to find users with mail enabled at any domain EXCEPT domainname.com, the filter should include the following: (mail=*)!(mail=*@domainname.com).

To import all email enabled users from the Active Directory irrespective of any specific domain name, enter the parameter as '(mail=*)'.

Note:

- CASG can only import LDAP users that have email addresses on domains that you have added to CASG in the Domains interface.
- To successfully import users, you must make sure the domain of their email addresses has been added to CASG AND that the LDAP Import is configured for each individual domain from the Domain Management Area of the respective domain.
- Mail attribute Enter the LDAP display name of the contact email address attribute of the AD Server. By default, this
 attribute name will be 'mail' for AD servers or the distinguished name (DN) or common user login name for the AD
 server. On other servers like Novel or OpenLDAP this attribute may be different and server specific.

Override existing records:

- Allow CASG to create user accounts as found on LDAP server Select this checkbox if you wish new users added in the AD server to be automatically added to CASG during synchronization. If you do not select this option, you can manually import the new users from the LDAP import confirmation page.
- Allow CASG to delete user accounts not found on LDAP server Select this checkbox if you wish users removed from AD server, to be automatically removed from CASG during synchronization. If you do not select this option, you can manually remove users from the LDAP import confirmation page.

Information Settings

• Send Reports - If enabled, CASG will send email notifications to the administrator whenever new users are created or users are removed either automatically, (if 'Allow to create users?'/'Allow to delete users?' are enabled) or manually

from the LDAP import confirmation page.

- Last synchronization time (GMT) Displays the date and time of last manual or scheduled synchronization with AD server, in GMT.
- Notification area Contains information about errors that occurred during synchronization. In most cases, this will
 contain the same information that is provided with the "Test connection" feature. Note this area is only visible if errors
 occur.
- To check the configuration and connectivity, click 'Test Connection'. If the connection is established successfully then the success message will be displayed with the total number of users detected from the AD server.

LDAP import configuration	Help
Connection successfully established, detected a total of 2 users on your server	
Connection settings	
Host (IP address or name):	

- To save your configuration, click 'Save'.
- To Save your configuration and run a manual synchronization of user base with the AD server instantly, click 'Save and run synchronization' now

LDAP Import Confirmation List

The LDAP import confirmation list interface displays the list of:

- Users created at the AD server and not yet been imported into CASG
- Users not present on AD server and not yet been removed from CASG

... if "Allow to create users?' / 'Allow to delete users?' are not enabled in LDAP import configuration interface, along with the list of users created in CASG. The administrator can import the users created at AD server into CASG manually and remove existing users from this interface.

Also, the administrator can initiate an on-demand synchronization from this interface.

Accessing the LDAP import confirmation list interface

- Open the 'Domains' interface and select the domain into which you want to import users.
- Select the domain from the list, click the 'Manage Domain' button to open the 'Domain Management' interface.
- Click 'Account management' tab > 'LDAP import confirmation list' sub tab.

The 'LDAP import confirmation list' interface will be displayed:

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - csgqa.comodo.od.ua / LDAP import confirmation list

LDAP import confirmation list		Help
It Run synchronization now O Move to ignore list More actions V		Refresh
S Filters		
Username	▲ Status	*
🔲 alex	create	
C derrick	create	
		Per page 15 🗸

The list of users added to and deleted from the AD server with the existing users created at CASG will be displayed. This list reflects difference between CASG users and AD users, considering LDAP ignore list.



- Users created at the AD server and not present in CASG will be displayed with the status 'Create'
- Users not present on the AD server but present in CASG will be displayed with the status 'Delete'

Using the filter option to search users

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashi	board - docteamcasg.como	odo.od.ua / LDAP import confirmation list	
LDAP import con	firmation list		🕜 Help
$\downarrow\uparrow$ Run synchronization now	Move to ignore list	More actions 🗸	🔁 Refresh
S Filters			
🕂 Username 🗸	contains	•	Apply filter
☑ Username		* Status	-
		No items found	
You can add more filters by clic	king + for narrowi	ing down your search. odo.od.ua / LDAP import confirmation list	
LDAP import cont	firmation list		Help
IT Run synchronization now	Move to ignore list	t More actions 🗸	Refresh
S Filters			

Vitters
 Vitters
 Vitters
 Vitters
 Vitters
 Vitters
 Vitters
 Vitters
 Vitters
 Status
 No items found

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

• **Username:** Will execute a search of usernames according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Username' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all usernames that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all users except the one entered in the text box.
- **Contains**: Displays all username(s) that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all username(s) that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all username(s) that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the username(s) that end with the words entered in the text box.

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

• Status: Sorts the results based on whether a user's status is 'Create' or 'Delete' selected from third column and condition selected from second column.

If 'Status' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays the users whose status is as chosen in third column
- Not Equals: Displays the users whose status is opposite to that chosen in third column

Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

Refresh

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Click the

J

button to display all users.

Note: To display all the users after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

• To run a manual on-demand synchronization, click 'Run synchronization now'

If you have not selected the option **Remember credentials** in **LDAP Import Configuration interface**, you will be asked to enter the username and password for CASG to access the AD server.

Connection credentials	[×
LDAP login name:		
Password:		
	OK Cancel	

Enter the LDAP login credentials and click 'OK'.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain da	shboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / LDAP import confirmation list	
LDAP import co	nfirmation list	Help
Synchronization for domain d	octeamcasg.comodo.od.ua has been started	
X Cancel synchronization	Move to ignore list More actions	Refresh
S Filters		
💟 Username	* Status	

CASG server will connect to your AD server and start detecting the changes in the users in the AD server.

All the users added to the AD server will be displayed as a list.

- To import or delete users selected by applying filter, apply filters as described **above** and click 'More actions' > 'Apply import by filter'.
- To import or delete a set of selected users, select the users and click 'More actions' > 'Apply import by selection'.
- To import all users created at the AD server and to delete all the users removed from AD server at once, clear all the filters and click 'More actions' > 'Apply import by filter'. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



Click OK. The import progress will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcaso.comodo.od.ua / LDAP import conf	mation list	
LDAP import confirmation list	@ +	elp
Import is in process. Please wait		
I Run synchronization now O Move to ignore list More actions	C Refre	sh
S Filters		
🔄 Username	- Status	

On completion, the selected users will be imported or deleted in synchronization with the AD server.

Note: The number of users that you can add for all the domains belonging to your account depends on your subscription plan. For example, if the subscription plan for your account allows you to add 1000 users and you have three domains, then you can add 300 users for domain 1, 300 users for domain 2 and 400 users for domain 3. You can set any value between 0 and 999999 in the 'Max. number of users' field in the **Add Domains / Edit Domains / Domain Settings** interface, but CASG checks if the total number of users for all domains is within your license limit.

• To move selected users to Ignore List, select the users and click 'Move to Ignore list'



... and click OK in the confirmation dialog.

Users moved to **ignore list** will be skipped from next synchronization with the AD server.

LDAP Import Ignore List

The LDAP import ignore list interface displays a list of users to be skipped from being created or deleted in CASG during synchronization with the AD server. Users can be moved to ignore list from the LDAP Import Confirmation List interface or manually added. Once added to the ignore list, the user will be skipped from the AD server from the next synchronization operation.

Accessing the LDAP import ignore list interface

- Open the 'Domains' interface and select the domain into which you want to import users.
- Select the domain from the list, click the 'Manage Domain' button to open the 'Domain Management' interface.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

• Click 'Account management' tab > 'LDAP import ignore list' sub tab.

The 'LDAP import ignore list' interface will be displayed.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashboard - docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua / LDAP import ignor	e list
LDAP import ignore list	🕐 Help
+ Add 🗑 Remove from ignore list	Refresh
S Filters	
🔲 Username	
🔲 bob	
derrick	
	Per page 15 🗸

Using the filter option to search users

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Dashboard / Domains / Domain dashbo	ard - docteamcasq.cor	nodo.od.ua / LDAP import ignore list	
LDAP import ignor	re list		Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Remove from ign	ore list		Refresh
S Filters			
🕂 Username 🗸	contains	v	Apply filter
🔽 Username	contains equals not equals		
	not contains starts with ends with	Vo items found	Per page 15 🗸

Available filters are:

• **Username:** Will execute a search of usernames according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

The following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all usernames that match the text entered in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all users except the one entered in the text box.
- **Contains**: Displays all username(s) that contain the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all username(s) that do not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all username(s) that start with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all the username(s) that end with the words entered in the text box.
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.



•	Click the	🔁 Refresh	button to display all users.

Note: To display all the users after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

To add users to ignore list

• Click 'Add'. The Add ignored user dialog will be displayed.

Add ignored user	·	×
lgnored users	➡ william■ greig	
	Save	

- Enter the user names to be added to the ignore list
- Click the ⁺ icon to add more users
- Click Save to add the users.

A 'Successfully added' message will be displayed at the top.

To remove the users from the ignore list

• Select the users and click 'Remove from ignore list'. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

Delete users	×
Are you sure you wan users?	t to delete the selected
ок	Cancel

• Click OK.

The users will be removed from the list and a 'Successfully deleted' message will be displayed at the top.

- Users removed from the ignore list will be imported to or deleted from CASG based on changes in the AD server, during the next synchronization if 'Allow to create users?'/'Allow to delete users?' are enabled in LDAP import configuration interface.
- Users removed from the ignore list will be listed in the LDAP import confirmation list interface based on changes in the AD server, during the next synchronization if 'Allow to create users?'/'Allow to delete users?' are not enabled in LDAP import configuration interface.

3.2.2 Audit Log

CASG keeps a record of actions initiated by users and administrators for all domains belonging to an account. The Audit Log area allow administrators with appropriate privileges to view these log reports. CASG also keeps logs of domains separately for each domain. For more details on selected domain audit log, refer to the section **Domain Audit Log**. This section explains about the consolidated log for all domains available in the account.

COMODO Creating Trust Online



The log details for all the domains will be displayed.

Dashboard / Audit log							
Audit log	Audit log						
Export to CSV by filte	er					Refresh	
S Filters							
Date (GMT +0)	Domain	Role ^	Login ^	Operation key	Operation description	Details	
2014-10-28 16:30:52	docteamcasg.comodo.oc	system		ACCEPT_AND_/	Accept and archive message	Recipients: john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender: admin@antispamgateway.comodo.com; Date: Tue Oct 28 14:53:04 GMT 2014; Subject: New account registered	
2014-10-28 16:30:51	docteamcasg.comodo.oc	system		ACCEPT_AND_/	Accept and archive message	Recipients: john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender: admin@antispamgateway.comodo.com; Date: Tue Oct 28 14:53:04 GMT 2014; Subject: New account registered	
2014-10-28 16:30:29	docteamcasg.comodo.oc	system		ACCEPT_AND_/	Accept and archive message	Recipients: demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender: admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>; Date: Tue Oct 28 13:37:58 GMT 2014; Subject: Re: DQ demo</demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	
2014-10-28 16:28:51	docteamcasg.comodo.oc	system		ACCEPT_AND_/	Accept and archive message	Recipients: demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua; Sender: admin <demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>; Date: Tue Oct 28 13:38:30 GMT 2014; Subject: DQ demo 2</demo@csg.comodo.od.ua>	

Sorting the Entries

Clicking any column heading switches the sorting of the entries based on the ascending/descending order of the entries as per the information displayed in the respective column. The sorting option is not available for 'Operation description' column.

Using Filter options to search particular event(s)

• Click anywhere on the 'Filters' tab to open the filters area.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Deshboard	/ Audit log						
Audit	log						🕜 Hel
🖨 Exp	ort to CSV by filter						C Refresh
O Filte	rs						
+ Do	main 🗸 contains		•				Apply filter
Date (GM	IT +0) ^ Domain		Role ^ Login	Operation key ^ Oper	ation description	Details	
2014-04-						Recipier Sender:	its: user@csg-arth-qa.comodo.od.ua; Diogvinenko
You ca	n add more filters by clic	king	for narrowing down	n your search.			
Dashb	oard / Audit log						
Auc	dit log						
	Export to CSV by filter						
0	Filters						
-							
+	Domain	~	contains	*			
-	Date	~	equals	*			
	Date						
Date	Domain Role	-	emain .	Role	Login	*	Operation key
2014	Login Operation description Details		g-arch-qa.comodo.od.ua	superadmin			DELETE_EMAIL

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Available filters are:

- **Domain:** Will execute a search of log entries according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- Login: Will execute a search of log entries according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Details:** Will execute a search of log entries according to the text entered in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select any one of the above options in the first drop-down, the following conditions are available:

- Contains: Displays all log entries that contain the words entered in the text box
- Equals: Displays all log entries that contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Equals: Displays all log entries that do not contain only the words entered in the text box
- Not Contains: Displays all log entries that don't contain the words entered in the text box
- Starts with: Displays all log entries that starts with the words entered in the text box
- Ends with: Displays all log entries that ends with the words entered in the text box

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

Date: Will execute a search of log entries according to the date selected in the calendar box (column 3) and the



condition selected in column 2.

- Role: Will execute a search of log entries according to the role selected in the third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
- **Operation Description:** Will execute a search of log entries according to the action selected in the third field (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

If 'Date' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays the entries that have the same date as the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Less than: Displays the entries with dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar
- Greater than: Displays the entries with dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar

If 'Role' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- Equals: Displays all log entries that is equal to the role selected in column 3.
- Not Equals: Displays all log entries that except the role selected in column 3.

If 'Operative description' is selected, the following conditions are available:

- **Equals:** Displays all log entries that is equal to the event selected in column 3.
- Not Equals: Displays all log entries that except the event selected in column 3.
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.

- Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.
 - 🔂 Refresh

Click the button to display all the entries.

The following table provides the details of actions initiated by user/administrator and shown under Operation Key and Operation Description columns in the log report:

S.No.	Operation Key	Operation Description
1	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_QUARANTINE_BY_FILTER	Delete quarantined messages by filter
2	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_QUARANTINE	Delete quarantined message
3	RELEASE_EMAIL_FROM_QUARANTINE	Release quarantined message
4	WHITELIST_RECIPIENT	Whitelist recipient
5	BLACKLIST_RECIPIENT	Blacklist recipient
6	UNWHITELIST_RECIPIENT	Remove recipient from the whitelist
7	UNBLACKLIST_RECIPIENT	Remove recipient from the blacklist
8	WHITELIST_SENDER	Whitelist sender
9	BLACKLIST_SENDER	Blacklist sender
10	UNWHITELIST_SENDER	Remove sender from the whitelist
11	UNBLACKLIST_SENDER	Remove sender from the blacklist
12	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_WHITELISTED_SENDERS	Reset senders whitelist
13	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_WHITELISTED_RECIPIENTS	Reset recipients whitelist
14	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_BLACKLISTED_SENDERS	Reset senders blacklist



15	RESET_TO_DEFAULT_BLACKLISTED_RECIPIENTS	Reset recipients blacklist
16	WHITELIST_SENDER_DOMAIN	Whitelist all senders of the domain
17	WHITELIST_RECIPIENT_DOMAIN	Whitelist all recipients of the domain
18	BLACKLIST_SENDER_DOMAIN	Blacklist all senders of the domain
19	BLACKLIST_RECIPIENT_DOMAIN	Blacklist all recipients of the domain
20	USER_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Request whitelist sender for user
21	USER_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Request blacklist sender for user
22	USER_RELEASE_REQUEST	Release request
23	USER_CANCEL_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Cancel request whitelist sender for user
24	USER_CANCEL_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Cancel request blacklist sender for user
25	USER_CANCEL_RELEASE_REQUEST	Cancel release request
26	ACCEPT_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Accept request whitelist sender for user
27	ACCEPT_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Accept request blacklist sender for user
28	ACCEPT_RELEASE_REQUEST	Accept release request
29	REJECT_WHITELIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Reject request whitelist sender for user
30	REJECT_BLACKLIST_REQUEST_PER_USER	Reject request blacklist sender for user
31	REJECT_RELEASE_REQUEST	Reject release request
32	SPAM_DETECTION_SETTINGS	Update spam detection settings
33	SPAM_DETECTION_SETTINGS_RESET_TO_DEFAULT	Reset spam detection settings
34	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_ARCHIVE_BY_FILTER	Delete archived messages by filter
35	DELETE_EMAIL_FROM_ARCHIVE	Delete archived message
36	RESEND_EMAIL_FROM_ARCHIVE	Resend archived message
37	REPORTS_AS_SPAM	Reports archived message as a SPAM
38	QUARANTINE_EMAIL	Quarantine message
39	ACCEPT_AND_ARCHIVE_EMAIL	Accept and archive message
40	MARK_EMAIL_AS_SPAM	Mark message as spam
41	ACCEPT_EMAIL	Accept message
42	WHITELIST_USER_SENDER	Whitelist sender for user
43	BLACKLIST_USER_SENDER	Blacklist sender for user
44	UNWHITELIST_USER_SENDER	Remove sender from the user whitelist
45	UNBLACKLIST_USER_SENDER	Remove sender from the user blacklist

46	QUARANTINE_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_UPDATE	Quarantine report subscription update
47	QUARANTINE_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_RESET_TO_ DEFAULT	Quarantine report subscription reset to default
48	DOMAIN_STATISTICS_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_UPD ATE	Domain report subscription update
49	DOMAIN_STATISTICS_REPORT_SUBSCRIPTION_RES ET_TO_DEFAULT	Domain report subscription reset to default
50	DOMAIN_ADD	Add domain
51	DOMAIN_DELETE	Remove domain
52	ADMIN_ADD	Add admin
53	ADMIN_EDIT	Edit admin settings
54	ADMIN_DELETE	Remove admin
55	ADMIN_UNLOCK	Unlock admin
56	ADMIN_REGENERATE_PASSWORD	Regenerate password for admin
57	ADMIN_PASSWORD_UPDATE	Update password for admin
58	SYSTEM_NOTIFICATIONS_TEMPLATE_CHANGE	System notifications template change
59	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_ADD	Add admin permission group
60	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_DELETE	Remove admin permission group
61	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_UPDATE	Update admin permission group
62	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_CHANGE_DEFAULT_GROUP	Change default admin permission group
63	ADMIN_PERMISSIONS_ASSIGN_GROUP	Assign admin permission group by selection
64	REPORT_SPAM_BY_FILE	Report delivered message as spam
65	DOMAIN_DESTINATION_ROUTES_UPDATE	Update destination routes
66	DOMAIN_LOCAL_RECIPIENTS_ADD	Add local recipient
67	DOMAIN_LOCAL_RECIPIENTS_DELETE	Remove local recipient
68	DOMAIN_LOCAL_RECIPIENTS_STATE_CHANGE	Local recipients state change
69	DOMAIN_ALIASES_ADD	Add domain alias
70	DOMAIN_ALIASES_DELETE	Remove domain alias
71	DOMAIN_SETTINGS_UPDATE	Update domain settings
72	DOMAIN_SETTINGS_RESET_TO_DEFAULT	Reset domain settings to default
73	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_ADD	Add relay restriction
74	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_UPDATE	Update relay restriction
75	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_DELETE	Remove relay restriction
76	DOMAIN_RELAY_RESTRICTIONS_STATE_CHANGE	Relay restriction state change
77	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_ADD	Add outgoing user



78	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_SETTINGS_UPDATE	Edit outgoing user
79	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_DELETE	Remove outgoing user
80	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_LOCK	Lock outgoing user
81	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_UNLOCK	Unlock outgoing user
82	DOMAIN_OUTGOING_USER_PASSWORD_UPDATE	Update password for outgoing user
83	DOMAIN_EMAIL_SIZE_RESTRICTION_CHANGE	Email size restriction change
84	DOMAIN_BLOCKED_EXTENSIONS_UPDATE	Update blocked extensions
85	DOMAIN_BLOCKED_EXTENSIONS_RESET_TO_DEFA ULT	Reset blocked extensions to default
86	DOMAIN_AUDIT_CONFIGURATION_CHANGE	Audit configuration change
87	DOMAIN_LDAP_CONFIGURATION_CHANGE	LDAP configuration change
88	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_ADD	Add incoming user
89	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_EDIT	Edit incoming user
90	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_DELETE	Remove incoming user
91	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_UNLOCK	Unlock incoming user
92	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_REGENERATE_PASSWO RD	Regenerate password for incoming user
93	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_PASSWORD_UPDATE	Update password for incoming user
94	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_ALIASES_UPDATE	Update incoming user aliases
95	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_MOVE_USER_TO_ALIAS	Move user to alias
96	DOMAIN_INCOMING_USER_MOVE_ALIAS_TO_USER	Move alias to incoming user
97	USER_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_ADD	Add user permission group
98	USER_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_DELETE	Remove user permission group
99	USER_PERMISSIONS_GROUP_UPDATE	Update user permission group
100	USER_PERMISSIONS_CHANGE_DEFAULT_GROUP	Change default user permission group
101	USER_PERMISSIONS_ASSIGN_GROUP	Assign user permission group by selection

Export Log Report to CSV

The log report can be exported to a comma separated value (CSV) file and is limited to 10,000 entries per file. If the entries exceed this value, exporting cannot be done and a warning will be displayed. Please note that exported file will display the entries in the same sorted order as in the interface.

To export log report to csv file

• Click the 'Export to CSV by filter' button.

Dashboard / Audit log								
Audit log								
Date (GMT +0)	▲ Domain	*	Role	*	Login	-	Operation key	
2014-04-7 12:02:13	csg-arch-qa.comod							

The 'File Download' dialog will be displayed.

•

Opening CASG-AuditE	xport-2014-10-27 12_33_31.csv
You have chosen to	open:
CASG-AuditE	cport-2014-10-27 12_33_31.csv
which is: Text	Document
from: http://5	.39.28.212:8080
What should Firefo	x do with this file?
Open with	Notepad (default)
Save File	
📃 Do this <u>a</u> uto	matically for files like this from now on.
	OK Cancel

Click 'Open' to view the file with an appropriate application or click 'OK' to save the file to your computer.

The values in the log report will be separated by commas and this file can be opened with appropriate application such as Excel or Openoffice Calc for easy analysis.

3.2.3 Administrator Account Management

The Account Management area of CASG allows an administrator with appropriate privileges to add new administrators for the same account. This area also allows the administrator to configure permissions for users and administrators, reset passwords and change the login status from enabled to disabled and vice-versa. If you have logged in using the CAM credentials, this area will have an additional icon 'Login to my Comodo account' through which you can access your CAM account. If logged in as an administrator, the 'Account Management' area will differ depending on the privileges configured for the administrator. Refer to the section 'Admin Groups & Permissions' for more details.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



Click the following links for more details:

- Managing Administrators
- User Groups & Permissions
- Admin Groups & Permissions
- Managing Comodo Account
- My Profile
- Users History

3.2.3.1 Administrators

In this interface, an administrator with appropriate privileges can add new administrators, delete existing administrators, set permission levels as well as edit the login status and regenerate new password for existing administrators. Refer to the section 'Admin Groups & Permissions' for more details on administrative privileges.

Click the following links for more details:

- Managing Administrators
- Adding New Administrators
- Deleting Administrators
- Editing Administrators
- Managing Permissions for Administrators

Managing Administrators

• Click the 'Account management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Admins' sub tab.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



The 'Admins' configuration interface will be displayed:

Deshboard / Admins								
Admins							0	Help
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete	d Edit	🖉 Manage permissions					Ref	resh
S Filters								
🖻 Login		^ Enabled	-	Last login	 Group	Target		
🗐 john@docteamcas;	a.comodo.oc	iua true		Apr 16, 2014 4:13:58 AM	Power Administrators	[docteamcasg.comod testdomain.com, csg- ga.comodo.od.ua, example.domain.com example1.domain.com	o.od.ua, arch- , n]	
	Þ. ÞI	[1-1/1]				Per	page 15	~

The 'Admins' interface displays a list of administrators with their CASG enabled/disabled status, their last login date and time, to which group they belong and the domains that they can manage. You can sort the entries in ascending or descending order based on the login, enabled status or last login time by clicking the up/down arrows in the respective column headers.

Using the filter option to search administrators

Click anywhere on the Filters tab to open the filters area.

Deshboard / Admins					
Admins					🕜 Help
+ Add 🗊 Del	ete 🥒 Edit 🥒 Manage permissions				Refresh
S Filters					
+ Login	🗸 contains 🗸				Apply fiter
🔄 Login	* Enabled	^ Last login	* Group	Target	
	mana filiana kwalialiwa 🕂	for normalized along the			

You can add more filters by clicking 🔳 for narrowing down your search.

<u>Dashboard</u> / Admins				
Admins				
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🥒 Ed	it 🖉 Manage permissions			
S Filters				
t Login v	contains 🗸			
Login Enabled	* Enabled	*	Last login	
Group				

You can remove a filter by clicking the 📒 icon beside it.

Following are the options in the first drop-down in the filters area:

• Login: Will execute a search of admins according to the text in the text box (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, the following filters are available in the second drop-down:

- Equals: Displays the results based on the administrator name that was entered in full in the text box.
- Not Equals: Displays all administrator(s), except the one entered in the text box.
- Contains: Displays all administrator(s) that contains the words entered in the text box.
- Not Contains: Displays all administrator(s) that does not contain the words entered in the text box.
- Starts With: Displays all administrator(s) that starts with the words entered in the text box.
- Ends With: Displays all administrator(s) that ends with the words entered in the text box.

Other options available in the first drop-down in the filters area:

Enabled: Sorts the results based on administrators' enabled / disabled status.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, 'equals' is the only option available in the second drop-down:

- **Equals:** Displays the results of enabled administrator(s) when the checkbox beside it is selected. When the checkbox is not selected, it displays the list of administrator(s) who are not enabled.
- Last Login: Will execute a search of admins according to the date selected in the calendar (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.

When you select this option in the first drop-down, the following filters are available:

- Equals: Displays the list of administrator(s) that has the last logged in on the same date as the selected date in the third box from the calendar.
- Less than: Displays the list of administrator(s) that has the last logged in on dates less than the selected date in the third box from the calendar.
- Greater than: Displays the list of administrator(s) that has the last logged in on dates greater than the selected date in the third box from the calendar.
- **Group:** Will execute a search of admins according to the group selected in last drop-down (column 3) and the condition selected in column 2.
 - Equals: Displays the results based on the group name that is selected in the drop down list from the third box.
 - Not Equals: Displays all administrator(s), except the one selected in the drop down list from the third box.
- Click 'Apply Filter' after selecting the filters.

The application will search the respective column(s) according to the filter(s) set and display the result.



• Click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area.

Refresh

Click the

button to display all administrators.

Note: To display all the administrators after using the filters option, you have to first click anywhere on the Filters tab to close the filters area and then click the 'Refresh' button.

To add a new administrator

• Click the Add button.

Dashboard / Admins				
Admins				
Add Bolete / Edit / M	lanage permissions			
S Fitters	New administrator		×	
🕂 Group 🗸 equals	Login:	smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		
	System notifications email(s):	fiatliena@gmail.com		
E Login *	Status:	Enabled	Group	Target
	Subscribe emails to global reporting	Ves		(doctea testdor
El jonn@docreamcasg.comodo.od.ua	Sa	Cancel	Power Administrators	exampl exampl
	1			

The 'New administrator' dialog will be displayed.

- Login Enter the new administrator's valid email address as login username.
- System notifications email(s) Enter the email addresses at which the new administrator should receive CASG
 notification emails. It can be the same email address as the login name and / or alternative email address(es) of up to
 a maximum of five. The quarantine requests from users, for blacklisting, whitelisting, or releasing quarantined emails
 and notifications such as of imports of users, local recipients and users via LDAP from CSV files will be sent to the
 email addresses specified in this field. Refer to the section Email Management for more details.
- Status Enables to change the login status of the new administrator. By default, this box is selected, that is, the new administrator can access CASG interface.
- Subscribe emails to global reporting Selecting this checkbox enables the new administrator to receive the periodical domain and quarantine summary reports of all domains belonging to the account at the email address specified as login user name. Refer to CASG Reports an Overview for more details.
- Click the 'Save' button.

The administrator will be added to the list and be placed in the default group. The privileges to the administrator can be configured according to his/her role. Refer to the section 'Managing Permissions for Administrators' for more details. An email to the added administrator will be sent automatically containing password to access CASG. The password can be reset in the edit interface. The added administrator will be displayed in the list.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Admins			
Admins			O Help
🕂 Add 🛅 Delete 🥒 Edit 🥒 Manage permissions			Refresh
S Fillers			
E Login * Enabled	* Last login	- Group	Target
🗐 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua true	Apr 16, 2014 5:43:33 AM	Power Administrators	(docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, testdomain.com, csg-arch- qa.comodo.od.ua, example.domain.com, example1.domain.com)
🖻 smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua true		Power Administrators	(docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, testidomain.com, csg-arch- qa.comodo.od.ua, example.domain.com, example1.domain.com)
I∉ ∉ <u>1</u> /1			Per page 15 ¥

To delete an administrator

• Select the administrator to be removed and click the 'Delete' button.

Dashicoand / Admins				
Admins				🕜 Help
+ Add Delete # Edit	Manage permissions			Refresh
Filters				
🖭 Login 🔶	Enabled *	Last login ^	Group	Target
V bob@casg.comodo.od.ua	true		HR	[docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua]
🛅 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	true	Apr 16, 2014 6:30:50 AM	Power Administrators	[docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, testdomain.com, csg-arch- qa.comodo.od.ua, example domain.com, example 1.domain.com]
🕑 smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	tue		Power Administrators	jdocteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, testdomain.com, csg-arch- qa.comodo.od.ua, example.domain.com, example.domain.comj
	1/3]			Per page 15 🖌

A confirm dialog will be displayed warning you that the selected administrators will be deleted.



• Click 'OK' to confirm the deletion.

The selected administrator(s) will be deleted from the list.

To edit an existing administrator

You can reset the password, change the CASG notification email address(es) and allow or deny permission for the administrators to access their CASG account in the edit interface.

• Select the administrator you want to edit from the list and click the 'Edit' button.

Admins				
+ Add 🗇 Delete 🖉 Edit	Manage permissions			
Filters				
🖻 Login	Edit administrator bob@casg.com	nodo.od.ua		Group
☑ bob@casg.comodo.od.ua	Login:	bob@casg.comod	lo.od.ua	HR
	System notifications email(s):	fiatliena@gmail.co	im	
john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	Status:	Enabled		Power Administrators
	Save Regen	erate password	Cancel	
smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	true			Power Administrators

The 'Edit administrator' dialog box will be displayed.

System notifications email(s) -Enter the email addresses at which the new administrator should receive CASG notification emails. It can be the same email address as the login name and / or alternative email address(es) of up to a maximum of five. The quarantine requests from users, for blacklisting, whitelisting, or releasing quarantined emails and notifications such as of imports of users, local recipients and users via LDAP from CSV files will be sent to the email addresses specified in this field. Refer to the section Email Management for more details.

Tip: The currently logged-in administrator can configure the Quarantine notification email address through Dashboard > Account Management > My Profile > Change Settings dialog.

- Status Enables to change the login status of the administrator.
- Regenerate password Click this button to reset the password for the administrator in case it is forgotten. The new
 password will be sent to the administrator's email automatically. The administrator has to use this new password to
 access CASG.
- Click the 'Save' button to confirm your changes.

Managing Permissions for Administrators

CASG allow administrators with appropriate privileges to assign permissions for other administrators that will determine what he/she can do and cannot do while logged into their respective CASG admin interface. The administrators can create policies and assign them to other administrators from this interface. See the section 'Admin Groups & Permissions' for more details on how to create groups and policies for administrators. A new administrator will be automatically assigned default permission settings.

To assign permissions for an administrator

Select the administrator or multiple administrators that you want assign permissions and click the 'Manage permissions' button.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Dashboard / Admins						
Admins					🕑 не	elp
+ Add 🗊 Delete 🖉 Edit 🧭	Manage permissions				Refres	sh
S Filters						
🖂 Login 🔶	Enabled	Last login	Group	Target		
Dob@casg.comodo.od.ua	true		HR	(docteamcasg.comodo.	od.uaj	
📰 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	true	Apr 16, 2014 6:49:49 AM	Power Administrators	[dorbeamcasg.comodo. bestdomain.com, csg-ar ga.comodo.od.ua, example.domain.com, examplet.domain.com	od.ua, rch-	
🛛 smith@docleamcasg.comodo.od.ua	true		Power Administrators	(docte amcaisg, comodo, testdomain, com, csg-ar qa, comodo, od, ua, example, domain, com, example1, domain, com	od.ua, rch-	
	9/3]			Per p	age 15	~

The 'Admin Groups & Permissions' interface will be displayed.

Admin groups & permissions	×
🕂 Add 🖉 Edit 📅 Delete 👃 Make defau	lt
Name	
Power Administrators (Default)	
© HR	
C Limited	
© General	
Assign to selected admins As	sign to filtered admins Cancel

The interface displays the list of groups available with same or different permission levels for each group. By default, 'Power Administrators (Default) group will be available and administrators can add, edit groups and assign permissions to other administrators. See the section 'Admin Groups & Permissions' for more details.

• Select the group from the list.

The permissions set for this group will be displayed on the right side.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Admin groups & permissions				
🕂 Add 🥒 Edit 📅 Delete 🕼 Make defaul	t			
Name	Permission:			
Power Administrators (Default)	 All customer permissions Add domain Admin management User permissions Admin permissions Admin permissions Report management User session history view View customer info Locale View Change Change user limit per domain Email template management Audit log 			
Assign to selected admins As	sign to filtered admins Cancel			

- Click the 'Assign to selected admins' button to set permissions for selected admin(s).
- Click 'Assign to filtered admins' button to set permissions for administrators found by filter.
- Click 'OK' in the confirmation dialog.

The selected admin(s) will be added to the group and a confirmation message will be displayed.

Dashboard / Admina						
Admins						🕜 Help
Permissions successfully assigned to 2	2 admin(s)					
🕂 Add 🛱 Delete 🥒 Edit 🏉	Manage permissions					Refresh
S Filters						
🖻 Login 🗠	Enabled	+	Last login	-	Group	Target
📰 bob@casg.comodo.od.ua	true				Limited	[docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, testdomain.com]
🔲 john@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	true		Apr 16, 2014 7:01:49 AM		Power Administrators	[docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, testidomain.com, csg-arch- qa.comodo.od.ua, example: domain.com, example:1.domain.com]
🔲 smith@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua	true				Limited	[docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, testdomain.com]
	3/3]					Per page 15 ¥

The interface also displays the new group assigned for the selected admin(s) under the 'Group' column.

3.2.3.2 User Groups & Permissions

The User Groups & Permissions interface allows the administrators with appropriate privileges to create email user groups according to the needs of the organization. Each group can be configured with different permission levels. This simplifies the process of configuring permission levels for each user meaning new or existing users belonging to all domains for the account can be simply assigned a group with a preset policy. The user interface will vary according to his/her permission level. See the

section 'Managing Permissions for Users' in 'User Account Management' on how to add users to predefined groups.

To create user groups

Click the 'Account management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'User groups & permissions' sub tab.



The 'User Groups & permissions' interface will be displayed.

Deshboard / User groups & permissions	
User groups & permissions	Help
🕂 Add 🥒 Edit 🛅 Delete 🖏 Make default	
Name	
Power Users	
O Users (Default)	

By default, two user groups, Power User and Users (Default), will be available. These two groups cannot be either edited nor deleted. Clicking any one of them will display the permission levels assigned for the group in the right side.

COMODO Creating Trust Online

Destitioned (User groups & permissions User groups & permissions + Add // Edit Delete & Make default	🕑 Heli
Name	Permission:
Power Users Users (Default)	 All user permissions Incoming Log Search Outgoing Log Search Report Spam User report subscriptions Quarantine Archive Create mail request Change user settings Whitelist / Blackdist

Clicking on the arrow beside a permission will display the tree structure of second level of permissions, if available.



For users in the 'Power User' group, all permission levels will be enabled. The 'Release quarantine messages' option will not be available to users in the regular 'Users' group. This means that if a user is assigned to the 'Power User' group, he / she can release quarantined messages from the quarantined mails list without approval from the administrator. See the section **Released Requests** in 'Email Management' for more details.

Permission Levels

- Incoming Log Search Allows a user to search and view the log of all incoming mails.
- Outgoing Log Search Allows a user to search and view the log of all outgoing mails.
- **Report Spam** Allows a user to report a mail as spam mail.
- User report subscriptions Allows a user to configure periodical quarantine report generation.
- Quarantine
 - Show Message Allows a user to view quarantined emails in same window or separate window.
 - Release messages Allows a user to release a quarantined mail without approval from the administrator.
 - Delete messages Allows a user to delete a quarantined mail without approval from the administrator.
- Archive



- View Allows a user to view archived emails in same window or separate window.
- Resend Allows a user to resend archived emails to himself / herself.
- Create mail request Allows a user to configure email request for CASG notifications.
- · Change user settings Allows a user to configure himself / herself as recipient whitelist.
- Whitelist / Blacklist
 - · Manage whitelist senders per user Allows a user to manage sender whitelist for his / her mail account
 - · Manage blacklist sender per user Allows a user to mange sender blacklist for his / her mail account

Click the following links for more details.

- Adding a new group
- Editing a group
- Deleting a group
- Making a group as default

Adding a New Group

To add a new group and configure permission levels, click the 'Add' button.

Jser groups & perm	nissions
🕂 Add 🖉 Edit 🖬 Delete	👃 Make default
Name Power Users	
0	

A new group creating page will be displayed.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / User groups & permissions		
User groups & permissions	He	lp
🕂 Add 🥒 Edit 🗑 Delete 👃 Make default		
Name	Permission:	
 Power Users Users (Default) Save 	 All user permissions Incoming Log Search Outgoing Log Search Report Spam User report subscriptions Quarantine Show Message Release messages Delete messages Delete messages Archive View Resend Create mail request Change user settings 	

 Enter the name of the group in the text field under the 'Name' column and enable the permission levels in the right side required for that group.

User groups & permissions	
Add Edit Delete Make default Name Permission:	Help
Name Permission: Power Users 4 All user permissions Users (Default) Incoming Log Set HR Outgoing Log Set User report Spam User report subs Quarantine Show Message Release mess Release mess	
 Power Users Users (Default) HR Incoming Log Set Outgoing Log Set Report Spam User report subst Quarantine Show Message Release mess 	
 ✓ Delete messa ✓ Archive ✓ View ✓ Resend ✓ Create mail reque Change user sett 	riptions e ages jes st ngs



• Click the 'Save' button.

The newly created group will be displayed in the interface.

Dashboard / User groups & permissions				
User groups & permissions				
🕂 Add 🖉 Edit 🛅 Delete 🚷 Make default				
Name				
O Power Users				
O Users (Default)				
© HR				

Now, users of domains belonging to the account can be assigned to this newly created group. See the section 'Managing Permissions for Users' in 'User Account Management' on how to add users to predefined groups.

Editing a Group

You can edit the name of an existing group and / or change the permission levels.

• To edit an existing group, select the group from the list and click the 'Edit' button.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Dashboard / User groups & permissions	
User groups & permissions	Help
🕂 Add 🖉 Edit 🗑 Delete 👃 Make default	
Name	Permission:
 Power Users Users (Default) HR 	 All user permissions Incoming Log Search Outgoing Log Search Report Spam User report subscriptions Quarantine Show Message Release messages Delete messages Delete messages View Kesend Create mail request
Save	Cancel

- Change the permission levels and / or the name of the group.
- Click the 'Save' button for the changes to take effect.

The users in the group that is edited will be automatically reassigned to the edited group.

Deleting a Group

• To delete a group, select it from the list and click the 'Delete' button.

Dashboard / User groups & permissions		
User groups & permissions		🕢 Help
Name	Permission:	
Power Users Users (Default) Elimited	All user permissions	

• Click 'OK' in the confirmation dialog.




The selected group will be deleted from the list.

Note 1: If you delete a group, users assigned to that group will be automatically moved to default group. You have to reassign the users if required.

Note 2: If you delete a user group created by the administrator and marked as default, then the 'Users' group that was shipped with the product will be set as default. All the users from the deleted group will be automatically migrated to the 'Users' group.

Making a Group as Default

CASG allows administrators to make an existing group as default group. Newly added users and users belonging to an existing group whose name was deleted will be automatically moved to this default group.

To make an existing group as a default group, select it from the list and click the 'Make default' button.

Dashboard / User groups & permissions		
User groups & permissions		O Help
+ Add 🖉 Edit 🛱 Delete 🕼 Make default		
Name	Permission:	
Power Users	All user permissions	
C Users (Default)		
O HR		
General	the second s	

A success dialog will be displayed.



Click 'OK'.

The selected group will be displayed as default group.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

rashipoard / U	lser groups 8	permissions		
Jser gi	roups	& perm	nissions	
+ Add	Ø Edit	Delete	🖒 Make default	
Name				Perm
D Power U	sers			> (
O Users				
D HR				
	Defaulth			

Note: If you delete a user group created by the administrator and marked as default, then the 'Users' group that was shipped with the product will be set as default. All the users from the deleted group will be automatically migrated to the 'Users' group.

3.2.3.3 Admin Groups & Permissions

The Admin Groups & Permissions interface allows the administrators with appropriate privileges to create administrator groups according to the needs of the organization. Each group can be configured with different permission levels. This simplifies the process of configuring permission levels for each administrator meaning new or existing administrators belonging to the account can be simply assigned a group with a preset policy. The admin interface will vary according to his/her permission level. See the section 'Managing Permissions for Administrators' in 'Administrators' on how to add administrators to predefined groups.

To create admin groups

Click the 'Account management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'Admin groups & permissions' sub tab.



The 'Admin Groups & Permissions' interface will be displayed.



Help

Destaboard / Admin groups & permissions

Admin groups & permissions	0
🕂 Add 🖉 Edit 🛅 Delete 🖏 Maka default	
Name	
PowerAdministrators (Default)	

By default, Power Administrator group will be available. This default group cannot be either edited nor deleted. Clicking on it will display the permission levels assigned for the group in the right side.



Clicking on the arrow beside a permission will display the tree structure of second level of permissions, if available.

Permission:	
 All customer permissions 	^
🗹 Add domain	
🔺 🗹 Admin management	
🗹 View	
🗹 Manage	
🔺 🗹 User permissions	
🗹 View	
🗹 Manage	
🔺 🗹 Admin permissions	
🗹 View	
🗹 Manage	
🔺 🗹 Report management	
🗹 View	
🗹 Change	
🗸 Hear eaceion histony viaw	*

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

For administrators in the 'Power Administrators' group, all permission levels will be enabled. The Permission level is divided into two categories, 'All Customer permissions' and 'All domain permissions'. While the former deals with providing privileges for managing customer related tasks such as adding domains, configuring email user permissions, report management and so on, the domain permission level deals with providing access to particular domain(s). This is very useful if you want to restrict administrators to manage selected domains only.

Permission Levels

- All customer permissions View and manage all customer related tasks.
 - Add domain Add new domain(s)
 - Admin management View and manage administrators for the account.
 - View Only view the list of administrators.
 - Manage Manage administrators for the account.
 - User permissions View and manage 'User Groups & Permissions'
 - View Only view 'User Groups & Permissions'.
 - Manage Manage 'User Groups & Permissions'
 - Admin permissions View and manage 'Admin Groups & Permissions'
 - View Only view 'Admin Groups & Permissions'
 - Manage Manage 'Admin Groups & Permissions'
 - Report management View and manage report subscriptions
 - View Only view report subscriptions
 - Change View and manage report subscriptions
 - User session history view View user sessions history for all domains in the account.
 - View customer info View information about the customer.
 - Change user limit per domain Configure the number of users for each domain in the account.
 - Email template management Edit the email template for user's notification emails.
 - Audit log Configure and view log for the permitted domain.
 - Log View and export the log for the permitted domain.
- All domain permissions Assign domain(s) management.
 - Assigned Domain(s) Manage domains, incoming and outgoing users, emails, audit log and reports.
 - View Only view the assigned domains.
 - Change Edit the assigned domain(s)
 - Remove Remove the assigned domain(s).
 - User Management View and manage incoming users, outgoing users, whitelist recipients and blacklist recipients.
 - Incoming user View, manage and unlock incoming users.
 - View Only view list of incoming users.
 - Manage View and manage incoming users.
 - Unlock Unlock users immediately without waiting for the timeout period to end.
 - Outgoing user View, manage, lock/unlock and import from incoming users.
 - View Only view list of outgoing users.
 - Manage View and manage outgoing users.
 - Outgoing settings Configure a list of outgoing users.
 - Lock/Unlock Lock or unlock outgoing users from sending out mails.
 - Import from incoming Import outgoing users from the list of incoming users.
 - Whitelist recipients View and manage whitelist recipients.
 - View Only view list of whitelisted recipients.
 - Manage View and manage whitelist recipients.

- Blacklist recipients View and manage whitelist recipients.
 - View Only view list of blacklisted recipients.

.

- Manage View and manage blacklist recipients.
- Users auto-import Automatically import all new incoming users bases on incoming email flow
 - · View Only view list of users auto-import recipients.
 - Manage View and manage users auto-import recipients.
- Domain geolookup restrictions View and manage CASG web interface access control policies
 - View Only view the access control polices
- Manage View and manage access control policies
- Domain management View and manage all domain related tasks.
 - Local recipients View and manage local recipients.
 - View Only view list of local recipients.
 - Manage View and manage local recipients.
 - Domain alias View and manage domain aliases
 - View Only view the list of domain aliases.
 - Manage View and manage domain aliases.
 - Email filter settings View and configure incoming spam detection settings.
 - View Only view incoming spam detection settings.
 - Manage View and configure incoming spam detection settings.
 - Threshold Configure changes for "Spam threshold" and "Probable spam threshold" fields in the Incoming Spam detection settings
 - Change View and configure "Spam threshold" and "Probable spam threshold" fields.
 - Domain settings View and change domain settings.
 - View Only view the list of domain settings.
 - Change View and configure domain settings.
 - LDAP View and configure LDAP settings for importing users.
 - View Only view LDAP settings and list of imported users.
 - Change View and configure LDAP settings for importing users.
 - Quarantine View and manage quarantined mails.
 - View Only view the list of quarantined mails.
 - Delete Deleted quarantined mails from the list.
 - Release Release quarantined mails to the recipients.
 - Archive View and mange copy of incoming mails in archive.
 - View Only view archived mails.
 - · Resend Resend archived mails to recipients.
 - Retain Retains archived mails from being purged automatically.
 - Delete Delete archived mails.
 - Incoming delivery queue View and mange queued mails.
 - View Only view queued mails.
 - Retry Retry to send queued mails to recipients.
 - Incoming Log Search Search incoming mails log.
 - Outgoing Log Search Search sent mails log.
 - Clear incoming cache Clear incoming callout cache.
 - Clear outgoing cache Clear outgoing callout cache.
 - User session history view View user sessions history for the assigned domain(s).



- Email Management View and configure all Email management related settings and tasks.
 - Email size View and configure email size settings.
 - View Only view email size settings.
 - Change View and configure email size settings.
 - Blocked extensions View and manage blocked extensions.
 - View Only view the list of blocked extensions.
 - Change View and manage blocked extensions.
 - Whitelist senders View and manage sender whitelist.
 - View Only view sender whitelist.
 - Change View and manage sender whitelist.
 - Blacklist senders View and manage sender blacklist.
 - View Only view sender blacklist.
 - Change View and manage sender blacklist.
 - Release requests View and manage requests from users for release of quarantined mails.
 - View Only view the list of requests from users for release of guarantined mails.
 - Manage View and manage requests from users for release of quarantined mails.
 - Whitelist requests View and manage requests from users to whitelist senders.
 - · View Only view the list of requests from users for adding senders to whitelist.
 - Manage View and manage requests from users to whitelist senders.
 - Blacklist requests View and manage requests from users to blacklist senders.
 - View Only view the list of requests from users for adding senders to blacklist.
 - Manage View and manage requests from users to blacklist senders.
 - Report spam Upload mails to CASG for reporting them as spam.
 - Whitelist sender rule View and manage rules for adding senders to whitelist
 - View Only view the whitelist sender rules
 - Manage View and manage whitelist sender rules
 - Blacklist sender rule View and manage rules for adding senders to blacklist
 - View Only view the blacklist sender rules
 - Manage View and manage blacklist sender rules
 - Whitelist senders per user View and manage whitelisted senders per user.
 - View Only view list of whitelisted senders per user.
 - Manage View and manage whitelisted senders per user.
 - Blacklist senders per user View and manage blacklisted senders per user.
 - View Only view list of blacklisted senders per user.
 - Manage View and manage blacklisted senders per user.
 - Domain relay restrictions View and configure email relay restriction rules
 - View Only view relay restriction rule
 - Manage View and manage relay restriction rules
 - Audit log Configure and view log for the permitted domain.
 - Configuration Configure the log settings for the permitted domain.
 - Log View and export the log for the permitted domain.
 - Report management View and configure settings for periodical domain and quarantine summary reports for the permitted domain.
 - View Only view the configured settings for periodical domain and quarantine summary reports for the permitted domain.
 - Change View and configure settings for periodical domain and quarantine summary reports for the



permitted domain.

Click the following links for more details.

- Adding a new admin group
- Editing a admin group
- Deleting a admin group
- Making a admin group as default

Adding a New Admin Group

• To add a new admin group and configure permission levels, click the 'Add' button.

dmin groups & pe	ermissions
+ Add Edit 🛱 Delet	e 🚷 Make default
lame	

A new admin group creating page will be displayed.



 Enter the name of the group in the text field under the 'Name' column and enable the permission levels in the right side required for that group.

Dashboard / Admin groups & permissions Admin groups & permissions Participation
Help Delete A Make default 📥 Add / Edit Permission: Name Power Administrators (Default) All customer permissions 🗹 Add domain General Admin management User permissions Admin permissions Report management User session history view View customer info Locale 🗹 Change user limit per domain 🗹 Email template management Audit log All domain permissions docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua

Click the 'Save' button.

The newly created group will be displayed in the interface.

Dashboard /	Admin groups	& permissions		
Admin	group	s & per	missions	
🕂 Add	Dedit	Delete	🗞 Make default	
Name				
O Power A	(dministrato)	rs (Default)		
C General				

Now, administrators belonging to the account can be assigned to this newly created group. See the section 'Managing Permissions for Administrators' in 'Administrators' on how to add users to predefined groups.

Editing a Admin Group

You can edit the name of an existing group and / or change the permission levels.

To edit an existing group, select the group from the list and click the 'Edit' button.

Desthoard / Admin groups & permissions	
Admin groups & permissions	Help
🕂 Add 🖋 Edit 🗊 Defete 😓 Make default	
Name	Permission:
PowerAdministrators (Default) General	All customer permissions Manain permissions
[®] HR	
Save	Cancel

- Change the permission levels and / or the name of the group.
- Click the 'Save' button for the changes to take effect.

The admins in the group that is edited will be automatically reassigned to the edited group.

Deleting a Admin Group

٠

• To delete a group, select it from the list and click the 'Delete' button.

Admin groups & permissions Admin groups & permissions Admin groups & permissions Add Add Add Add Add Add Add Ad	Dashboard / Admin groups & permissions	
Hame Permission: Name Permission: Permission: <th>Admin groups & permissions</th> <th>Help</th>	Admin groups & permissions	Help
Name Permission: Power Administrators (Default) General General HR HR	+ Add 🖉 Edit 🗑 Delete	
Power Administrators (Default) General General HR	Name	Permission:
General All domain permissions HR	Power Administrators (Default)	All customer permissions
● HR	C General	All domain permissions
	HR	

• Click 'OK' in the confirmation dialog.



The selected group will be deleted from the list.

Note 1: If you delete a group, admins assigned to that group will be automatically moved to default group. You have to reassign the administrators if required.

Note 2: If you delete an admin group created by the administrator and marked as default, then the 'Power Administrator' group that was shipped with the product will be set as default. All the admins from the deleted group will be automatically migrated to the 'Power Administrator' group.

Making an Admin Group as Default

CASG allows administrators to make an existing group as a default group. Newly added administrators and administrators belonging to an existing group whose name was deleted will be automatically moved to this default group.

• To make an existing group as a default group, select it from the list and click the 'Make default' button.

Deshhoard / Admin groups & permissions		
Admin groups & permissions		P Help
Name	Permission:	
Power Administrators (Default) General HR	 Image: Second Sec	

A success dialog will be displayed.



Click 'OK'.

•

The selected group will be displayed as default group.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*



Note: If you delete an admin group created by the administrator and marked as default, then the 'Power Administrator' group that was shipped with the product will be set as default. All the admins from the deleted group will be automatically migrated to the 'Power Administrator' group.

3.2.3.4 My Comodo Account

This feature will be available in the 'Account management' tab if you have logged in to CASG using CAM account credentials.

Gol
Deshboard
🜐 Domains
😥 Audit log
🖆 Account management 🛛 🗸 🗸
Admins
User groups & permissions
Admin groups & permissions
Login to my Comodo account
My profile
Users history
🐰 Customer management 💦 🔸

Clicking the 'Login to my Comodo account' sub tab will take you to https://accounts.comodo.com/login page. From here you can...

- Add more subscriptions for CASG account
- Change your password
- Change contact information
- Sign up to other Comodo products

...and many more.

For more details on CAM account, visit our online website at help.comodo.com/topic-211-1-513-5907—Introduction-To-Comodo-



Accounts-Manager.html

3.2.3.5 My Profile

The My Profile interface allows the currently logged-in administrator to change his / her login password to CASG as well as to change settings for idle session timeout and CASG notification email address.

• Click the 'Account management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'My profile' sub tab.

COMODO Antispam Gateway	0.
Go!	Do
🙆 Dashboard	M
Domains	
😥 Audit log	
🔄 Account management 🛛 🗸 🗸	
Admins	
User groups & permissions	
Admin groups & permissions	
C = My profile	
Users history	
🥵 Customer management 💦 🔉	

Alternatively, the My Profile interface can be accessed by clicking 'My Account' > 'My Profile' at the top right of the interface.



The My Profile interface will be displayed.

Desiriboand J My profile	
My profile	📀 нер
Change password	
New password : Confirm password :	
	Siwe
Change settings	
Login: System notifications email(s):	Iohn@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua fiatiena@gmail.com
Number of minutes before my session expires	30
	Sale

Note: The interface will vary depending on the login credential that you have used to access CASG. For administrators who have logged in using the CAM credentials, the 'Change password' feature will not be available. The password can be changed after logging in to the CAM account.

Click the following links for more details:

- Changing Administrator's password
- · Changing settings for idle session timeout and CASG notification emails

3.2.3.5.1 Changing Password of the Administrator

The Change Password allows the currently logged-in administrator to change his/her login password.

To change the password

• Click the 'Account management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'My profile' sub tab.

The My Profile interface will be displayed. In the 'Change password' section, enter the new password and confirm it in the respective text fields.

Change password		
New pa	assword :	••
Confirm pa	assword : ••••	••
	Sav	e

Click the 'Save' button.



Click 'OK'.

The administrator has to use the new password to login into the CASG interface.

3.2.3.5.2 Change Settings

The 'Change settings' area in the My Profile interface allows the currently logged-in administrator to set his / her idle session timeout period as well as to change the CASG notifications emails.

To set idle session timeout and change system notifications email address

• Click the 'Account management' tab on the left hand side navigation to expand and then click the 'My profile' sub tab.

The 'Change settings' section will be displayed in the lower portion of the My Profile interface.

Change settings	
Login:	
System notifications email(s):	fiatiena@gmail.com
Number of minutes before my session expires	30 🗘
	Save

- System notifications email(s) Enter the email addresses at which the new administrator should receive CASG
 notification emails. It can be the same email address as the login name and / or alternative email address(es) of up to
 a maximum of five. The quarantine requests from users, for blacklisting, whitelisting, or releasing quarantined emails
 and notifications such as of imports of users, local recipients and users via LDAP from CSV files will be sent to the
 email addresses specified in this field. Refer to the section Email Management for more details.
- Number of minutes before my session expires You can set the idle session timeout period in the box. Enter the period in minutes or increase / decrease the period by clicking the up / down arrow. The valid entry is between 1 minute and 120 minutes. Please note this feature will not be available if an administrator is logged into CASG using CAM credentials.
- Click Save for your changes to take effect.

3.2.3.6 Users History

The 'Users History' area in 'Administrator Account Management' allows the administrators to view user history for all domains within a particular date range. You can filter users by IP address, last login, domain, username and/or location. By default, the most recent 15 records will be displayed.

Use of filters to create custom searches is covered in more detail here.

3.2.4 Customer Management

The Customer Management area of CASG allows an administrator to view the details of the account they are logged into. The administrator configure subscriptions for the periodical Domain and Quarantine summary reports for domains; create an account; update the product and extend your license term. The administrator can also customize the 'support information' area in the notification emails that are generated for activities such as while adding a new user, password regeneration, quarantine request and quarantine report.

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

COMODO Antispam Gateway	Quarantine: 0 Release r	requests: 0 Whitelist requests	0 Blacklist requests: 0		L My Account			
	Dashboard / Customer info							
🕗 Dashboard	Customer info				🕑 Help			
	Name : Doc Team	Name : Doc Team						
	CAM login : docteamfullye	ersioncustomer@comodo.com						
	CAM email : docteamfully	CAM email: docteamfullversioncustomer@comodo.com						
🥂 Customer management 🛛 🗸	Totals							
	Number of users : 2 Max. number of users 10	Number of users : 2 Max, number of users 10						
	Number of domains 2							
	Max. number of domains 11	1						
	Disk quota (GB) 0.013 Disk space 0 bytes							
	Subscriptions	Subscriptions						
	Max. number of users	Max. number of domains	License expiration date	Disk quota (GB)	Enabled			
	5	6	Jul 21, 2015	0	true			
	5	5	Aug 07, 2015	13	true			
	End-User License and	d Subscriber Agreement						

Click the links for more details:

- Viewing Customer Information
- Managing subscriptions for reports
- Notification Email Settings

3.2.4.1 Viewing Customer Information

The Customer Info interface provides the administrator with the details like maximum number of users, domains, license term and so on of the CASG account.

To view the account Information

• Click Customer Management tab from the left hand side navigation to expand it and then click the 'Customer Info' tab from the sub menu.

The 'Customer Info' interface will be displayed:

The image below shows an example of Customer Info who has purchased multiple licenses.

COMODO Antispam Gateway	Quarantine. 0 Release	requests: 0 Whitelist requests	0 Blacklist requests: 0		💄 My Account			
	Deshboard / Customer info							
🕜 Dashboard	Customer info	Customer info O Help						
① Oomains	Name : Doc Team	Name : Doc Team						
	CAM login : docteamfully	CAM login : docteamfullversioncustomer@comodo.com						
	CAM email : docteamfully	ersioncustomer@comodo.com						
🥂 Customer management 🗸 🗸	Totals							
Customer info	Number of users : 2 Max. number of users 10							
Manage report subscriptions	Number of domains 2							
Email template settings	Disk guota (GB) 0.013	1						
	Disk space 0 bytes							
	Subscriptions							
	Max. number of users	Max. number of domains	License expiration date	Disk quota (GB)	Enabled			
	5	6	Jul 21, 2015	0	true			
	5	5	Aug 07, 2015	13	true			
	End-User License an	d Subscriber Agreement						

In the 'Customer Info' panel you will find the details of subscription(s) for your account. For multiple licenses, the number of users and domains that are allowed for all the licenses purchased will be added and displayed at the bottom most subscription column.

From the 'Customer Info' panel the administrator can get the details of subscription(s) for the CASG account. For multiple licenses, the number of users and domains that are allowed for all the licenses purchased will be added and displayed at the bottom most subscription column.

Name

- The name of the account is displayed at the Name title bar
- CAM Login: Displays the login user name for the account in Comodo Accounts Manager (CAM) at
 https://accounts.comodo.com. The administrator can use this login username to log in to CAM for purchasing
 additional licenses and renewal of existing licenses.
- CAM email: Displays the email address for the account as registered at CAM.

Totals

- Number of Users: Displays the total number of enrolled users belonging to all the domains.
- Max. Number of Users: The total number of users that can be added as per all the subscriptions made for the account, that is, number of users cannot exceed the number given in this field for all domains included.
- Number of Domains: Displays the number of domains enrolled for account.
- Max. Number of Domains: The total number of domains that can be added as per all the subscriptions made for the account.
- **Disk quota**: Displays the total storage space allotted in CASG server for archiving incoming messages as per all the subscribed packages, in GB.
- **Disk space:** Displays the storage space used by the archived mails in the CASG server.

Subscriptions

The following details are displayed for each subscription:

- Max. Number of Users: The maximum number of users that can be added to the account as per the subscription, that is, number of users cannot exceed the number given in this field for all domains included.
- Max. Number of Domains: The maximum number of domains that can be added as per the subscription.
- License Expiration Date: Displays the date till which the license is valid for the subscription.
- Disk quota: The maximum storage space allotted for mail archive in the CASG server, as per the subscription.
- Enabled: Displays whether the subscription is active or not.

End-User License and Subscriber Agreements

• Displays the complete Comodo Antispam Gateway End-User License and Subscriber Agreement.

3.2.4.2 Manage Report Subscriptions

The Manage report subscriptions interface allows the administrator to configure the subscription to the periodical 'Domain' and 'Quarantine' summary reports of all the domains for the administrators enrolled for the account. Refer to **CASG Reports - an Overview** for more details.

To access Manage report subscriptions interface

• Click Customer Management tab from the left hand side navigation to expand it and then click the 'Manage report subscriptions' tab from the sub menu.

The 'Manage report subscriptions' interface will be displayed:



COMODO Antispam Gateway									L My Account	
Go!	Dashboard / Mana	age report subscripti	ons					ukajakaja kaja		
🕖 Dashboard	Manage	report sul	bscriptions	5					0	Help
Domains	Report recip	Report recipients								
	docteamfuilver	sioncustomer@co	modo.com							
	(C) Quanta	no con ort								
👷 Customer management 🛛 🗸	Quarantii	ne report								
Customer info	Hour	Day of month	Day of week	Send empt	Enabled	Start date (GM	T) Re	eport length		
Manage report subscriptions Email template settings	Every hour Choose	Every day Choose	Every week day Choose							
	1	2	🖾 Sunday	<u> </u>	12					
	E 2	E 3	 Tuesday Wednesday 							
	E 4 🗸	E 5 🖕	🖭 Thursday							
	O Domain	statistics repor	t							
	Period	Hour		Day of month	Day of wee	ek	Send empty	Enabled	Start date (Gil Report I	length
		@Every Other	r hour tee	@Every day O'Choose	©Every we @Choose	sk day ,				

The 'Report recipients' field will be auto-populated with the email addresses of all the administrators available for the account and enabled for the same, at the time of **adding them**. The report recipients can be added or removed from this interface by entering the administrator's email address or deleting them and clicking the 'Save' button at the bottom.

The administrator can configure the subscription for two types of reports from this interface:

- Quarantine Report The periodical report which can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly, will
 contain a detailed statistics of the mails that are identified as spam or containing malicious content and moved to
 Quarantine of the domain automatically by CASG. Refer to CASG Reports An Overview for more details.
- **Domain Report** The periodical report which can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly, will contain a detailed statistics of number of users, mails that have been received at and sent from the domain, number of spams identified and blocked and so on. Refer to **CASG Reports An Overview** for more details.

To configure the subscription of the reports

- You can expand/collapse a report configuration section by clicking on the respective strip.
- If you want the administrators to receive the periodical reports, select the 'Enabled' checkbox in the row of the respective report type. If both the reports are required, you can select both the checkboxes.
- Leave the 'Send empty' checkbox unchecked if reports without any statistics need not to be sent to recipients.
- Select the frequency at which the reports are to be sent to the administrators.

Quarantine Report

Quarantine report							
Hour	Day of month	Day of week	Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GMT)	Report length	
©Every hour @Choose	Every day Choose	 Every week day Choose 					
0	1	📄 Sunday 🔺					
☑ 1	2	📝 Monday 🗧	e E		Jul 01, 2015 01:00	Next report for 98 day(s) from last run (2015-03-24 16:37)	
2	3	Tuesday					
2 3	<u> </u>	Vednesday					
🕅 4 🗸	E 5 🗸	🔝 Thursday 🖕					

- Hour The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every hour or at the selected hour(s) of the day or date chosen from 'Day of month' or 'Day of week' columns.
- **Day of month** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every month chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Day of week** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every week chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Start date** Displays the start date of the report generation depending on the options chosen (as per Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)).
- Report length Displays the period of the report that will be generated depending on the options chosen.

Domain Statistics Report

Obmain statis	tics report						
Period	Hour	Day of month	Day of week	Send empty	Enabled	Start date (GI	Report length
	Every hour Choose	Every day Choose	©Every week day ©Choose				
	🗖 0 📩	1	🔲 Sunday 🔺				Next report for
Weekly	1	2	Monday			Jun 29, 2015	4 week(s) from last run
	2	2 3	Tuesday			11:00	(2015-03-24
	E 3	4	Wednesday				16:37)
	E 4 🗸	5 🚽	🖾 Thursday 🚽				

- **Period** Enables you to set the period to be covered in the report. The report will contain the statistics of all the domains in the account for the past one hour, one week, one month or one year, as selected from drop-down from the scheduled report time.
- Hour The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every hour or at the selected hour(s) of the day or date chosen from 'Day of month' or 'Day of week' columns.
- **Day of month** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every month chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- **Day of week** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators every day or on the specific day every week chosen at the hour selected from the 'Hour' column.
- Start date Displays the start date of the report generation depending on the options chosen (as per Greenwich Mean Time (GMT)).
- Report length Displays the period of the report that will be generated depending on the options chosen.
- Click 'Save' for your settings to take effect.
- Clicking the 'Reset settings to default' button will disable both Quarantine and Domain statistics reports. The 'Report Recipients' field will not be cleared.

3.2.4.3 Notification Email Settings

By default, all the notification mails sent to administrators and users on various events like adding a new user, password regeneration, quarantine request or periodical report mails like quarantine report will contain the links to the online help guide and Comodo support in the footer. The administrator can customize the footer for adding their contact and support information, from the Email template settings area.

To customize the notification emails

• Click Customer Management tab from the left hand side navigation to expand it and then click the 'Email template



settings' tab from the sub menu.

The 'Email template settings' interface will be displayed:



Please note the customization can be done only in html format.

- Select the check box 'Change default email footer' if you want to edit the details.
- Edit the details in html format as per your requirement and click the 'Save' button.
- Click the 'Reset to default' button to display Comodo support information in the notification emails.

4 CASG Reports - An Overview

Comodo Antispam Gateway can generate three kinds of periodical reports, Quarantine report, Domain statistics report and User import report, and send them to administrators and users as configured.

Reports are generated for account level and domain level:

- 1. Global reports for all domains covered by the customer account. See the section 'Managing Subscriptions for Reports' under 'Customer Management' for more details on customer level.
- Domain level reports specific for each domain. See the section 'Manage Report Subscriptions for Selected Domain' under 'Incoming' section for reports on domain levels.

The reports for these types will be similar except the former will contain reports for all domains while the latter will contain reports for the selected domain. The reports will be sent routinely at the selected times, in the language set for the account.

CASG creates three kinds of reports:

- Quarantine Report A statistical breakdown of mails identified as spam or malicious that were moved to quarantine by CASG. The report can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly.
- Domain Statistics Report A comprehensive report which covers all mail activity for the domain. This includes
 information covering the number of users; mails that have been received at and sent from the domain; number of mail
 identified spam/malicious; number of mails blocked and so on. The report can be configured to be received hourly,
 daily, weekly or monthly by the administrator.
- Users auto-import report The periodical report containing details of new users that were auto-imported into CASG for each domain, based on incoming mails received for them at the mail server. The report can be configured to be

received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly by the administrator. The user auto-import reports are generated only for the domain level and not for the customer account level.

- Quarantine Release Report The periodical report containing details of mails that were released from the quarantine
 list by both administrators and users with appropriate privileges. The report can be configured to be received hourly,
 daily, weekly or monthly by the administrator. The quarantine release reports are generated only for the domain level
 and not for the customer account level.
- Reported Spam Report A detailed report of mails that were reported as spam by administrators as well as users
 with appropriate privileges. The report also includes details of mails that were uploaded as spam to CASG. The report
 can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly by the administrator. The reported spam reports are
 generated only for the domain level and not for the customer account level.
- Reports can be enabled or disabled per administrator in **Dashboard > Account Management > Admin > Add Administrators** or **Edit Administrators**.

4.1 Quarantine Report

The Quarantine Report contains a list of mails that were identified as spam or containing malicious content and were moved to Quarantine automatically by CASG, with the details on sender, receiver, date and attachments. Clicking the subject line in the list will open the respective mail in a new CASG window.

- Administrator
 - **Domain Level** The Report generated for an administrator will contain the details of the mails moved to quarantine of the selected domain.
 - **Customer Level** The Report generated for an administrator will contain the details of the mails moved to quarantine of all the domains belonging to the account.
- User The Report generated for a user will contain the details of the mails moved to quarantine of the user.

The report can be subscribed to be received hourly, daily, weekly or monthly for an administrator and daily, weekly or monthly for a user.

- Hourly The reports will be generated and sent every hour to the administrators through email.
- Daily -The reports will be generated and sent daily to the administrators/user through email.
- Weekly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators/user through email on every seventh day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mails quarantined during the past seven days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the week from the day of configuration and subsequently every seven days.
- **Monthly** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators/user through email on every 30th day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mails quarantined during the past 30 days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the month from the day of configuration and subsequently every 30 days.

An example of a Quarantine report is shown below:

Сомодо Antispam Gateway

Here is the quarantine report for docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua from Apr 02, 2014 14:25 to Apr 11, 2014 00:00

Subject	From	То	CC (to docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua only)	Date	Size	0
test spam email 1	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 02 14:26:40 GMT 2014	8.16 KB	8
test spam email 2	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>	demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 02 14:27:00 GMT 2014	8.18 KB	8
Fw: We have free samples for you, now try before you buy @ your doorsteps!	John Smith <flatliena@gmail.com></flatliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Mon Apr 07 08:52:31 GMT 2014	3.02 KB	0
Ew. We have free samples for you, now try before you buy @ your doorsteps!	John Smith <fiatiena@gmail.com></fiatiena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Mon Apr 07 08:52:31 GMT 2014	3.02 KB	8
Ew. FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTION'S II	John Smith <fiatiena@gmail.com></fiatiena@gmail.com>	demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 09 04:31:41 GMT 2014	231.0 KB	8
Ew. FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTION'S II	John Smith <fiatiena@gmail.com></fiatiena@gmail.com>	demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 09 04:31:41 GMT 2014	231.0 KB	8
Ew. Register and Get Rs. 5000 to Shop Nowl Introducing Pepperfry.com - India's Largest Home and Furniture Online Store	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 09 04:32:36 GMT 2014	3.05 KB	8
Ew. Register and Get Rs. 5000 to Shop Nowl Introducing Pepperfry.com - India's Largest Home and Furniture Online Store J	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 09 04:32:36 GMT 2014	3.05 KB	8
Ew. Get Rs. 25 assured recharge + chance to win an IPOD.	John Smith <fiatiena@gmail.com></fiatiena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 09 04:33:22 GMT 2014	3.98 KB	8
Ew: Claim your exclusive rewards with the American Express Gold Card	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 09 06:33:00 GMT 2014	26.5 KB	8
Fwd Fw: Send UNLIMITED Emails/Newsletter in Just Rs 2,500/mo, ZERO SETUP COST	John Smith <fiatliena@gmail.com></fiatliena@gmail.com>	demo1@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua, demo2@docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua		Wed Apr 09 06:40:43 GMT 2014	2.3 KB	8

Having Trouble? Support is here to help. Open a Ticket at https://support.comodo.com or call 1.888.COMODO (266.6361)

Clicking on the 'Subject' link will open the respective mail in a new CASG window. You need to login to CASG to read
the mail in the new window.

4.2 Domain Statistics Report

The Domain Statistics Report provides details on all the mail activities on the domain. This includes information covering the number of users; mails that have been received at and sent from the domain; number of mail identified spam/malicious; number of mails blocked and so on. The report can be configured to be received hourly, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly by the administrator.

- Domain Level The Report generated for an administrator will contain only the details of domain statistics of the selected domain.
- Customer Level The Report generated for an administrator will contain the details of domain statistics of all the domains belonging to the account.

Note: The Domain Statistics Report is available only to the administrators .

The report can be subscribed to be received hourly, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly.

- Hourly The reports will be generated and sent every hour to the administrators through email.
- Daily -The reports will be generated and sent daily to the administrators through email.
- Weekly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every seventh day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past seven days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the week from the day of configuration and subsequently every seven days.
- Monthly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every 30th day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past 30 days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the month

from the day of configuration and subsequently every 30 days.

• Yearly - The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every 365th day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past 12 months. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining months of the year from the day of configuration and subsequently every 12 months.

An example of a Domain Statistics Report is shown below:

ere is the daily Domair	n statistics report for docteamcasg.comodo.od.ua from Apr 09, 2014 23:00 to Apr 10, 2014 23:
Number of users	7
E-mail size limit	262144 KB
Spam ratio	0.0 %
Not spam messages	21
Not spam messages size	4656687
Unsure messages	0
Unsure messages size	0
Spam messages blocked	0
Spam messages size	0
Viruses blocked	0
Viruses size	0
Blacklisted messages	0
Blacklisted messages size	0
Total filtered messages	21
Total messages	21

4.3 Auto-Imported Users Report

The Users Auto-Import Report provides details on all the new users belonging to a managed domain, that were automatically imported to CASG on receiving an incoming mail addressed to them at the mail server. The auto-imported users are sent with an invitation email containing login credentilas for them to access the CASG user interface. For more details on managing auto-import, refer to the section Managing User auto-import.

Note: The user auto-import reports are generated only for the domain level and not for the customer account level. The Report is available only to the administrators .

The User Auto-Import Report contains the following details:

- Imported users count The total number of users automatically imported into CASG for report time period.
- Enabled users count The number of auto imported users that have activated their account by clicking the link in the invitation mail or logging-in to CASG using the credentials provided in the mail.
- Invited users count The number of auto imported users that have been sent the invitation mails but yet to activate their account.
- User names list The list of auto imported users.

An example of a Users Auto-Import Report is shown below:





Here is the users auto-import report for csgqa.comodo.od.ua from Nov 21, 2014 09:00 to Nov 21, 2014 10:00

- Imported users count 1 Enabled users count 1
 - Invited users count 0
 - User names list admin

For help, see the Admin guide: <u>http://help.comodo.com/topic-157-1-288-3192-introduction-to-comodo-antispam-gateway.html</u>

Having Trouble? Support is here to help. Open a Ticket at <u>https://support.comodo.com</u> or call 1.888.COMODO (256.2608)

4.4 Quarantine Release Report

The 'Quarantine Release Report' provides details of mails that were released from quarantine by the administrators as well as by the users with appropriate privileges. This also includes quarantine release requests accepted by administrators.

Note: The quarantine release reports are generated only for the domain level and not for the customer account level. The report is available only to the administrators .

The report can be subscribed to be received hourly, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly.

- Hourly The reports will be generated and sent every hour to the administrators through email.
- Daily -The reports will be generated and sent daily to the administrators through email.
- Weekly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every seventh day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past seven days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the week from the day of configuration and subsequently every seven days.
- **Monthly** The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every 30th day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past 30 days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the month from the day of configuration and subsequently every 30 days.
- Yearly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every 365th day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past 12 months. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining months of the year from the day of configuration and subsequently every 12 months.



An example of a Quarantine Release Report is shown below:



4.5 Reported Spam Report

The 'Reported Spam Report' provides details of mails that were reported as spam by the administrators as well as by the users with appropriate privileges. This also includes details of mails uploaded from the '**Report Spam**' interface.

Note: The reported spam reports are generated only for the domain level and not for the customer account level. The report is available only to the administrators .

The report can be subscribed to be received hourly, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly.

- Hourly The reports will be generated and sent every hour to the administrators through email.
- Daily -The reports will be generated and sent daily to the administrators through email.
- Weekly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every seventh day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past seven days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the week from the day of configuration and subsequently every seven days.
- Monthly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every 30th day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past 30 days. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining days of the month from the day of configuration and subsequently every 30 days.
- Yearly The reports will be generated and sent to the administrators through email on every 365th day from the start date set in the 'Start date' field. The report will contain details of the mail activities for the domains during the past 12 months. The first report will be sent on the start date and will contain the statistics for the remaining months of the year from the day of configuration and subsequently every 12 months.

An example of a Reported Spam Report is shown below:

COMODO Antispam Gateway

Reported Spam report for csgqa4.comodo.od.ua from Jul 01, 2015 10:00 to Jul 01, 2015 11:00

Date	Operation description	Login	Role	Details
Wed Jul 01 10:06:38 GMT 2015	Report delivered message as spam	admin1@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	admin	Recipients: user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua; Sender: Dagwood Bumpsted <avantistude@gmail.com>; Date: Wed Jul 01 10:01:10 GMT 2015; Subject: Fwd: Get instant Online Personal Loan approval and disbursal in 72 hours</avantistude@gmail.com>
Wed Jul 01 10:39:03 GMT 2015	Report delivered message as spam	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user	Recipients: user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua; Sender: Dagwood Bumpsted <avantistude@gmail.com>; Date: Wed Jul 01 10:01:10 GMT 2015; Subject: Fwd: Get instant Online Personal Loan approval and disbursal in 72 hours</avantistude@gmail.com>
Wed Jul 01 10:41:54 GMT 2015	Reports archived message as a Spam	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user	Recipients: user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua; Sender: dagwood bumpsted <avantistude@gmail.com>; Date: Wed Jul 01 10:40:56 GMT 2015; Subject: Fwd: Zero Fees, Attractive Interest Rates and Loans upto 25L</avantistude@gmail.com>
Wed Jul 01 10:52:02 GMT 2015	Reports archived message as a Spam	user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user	Recipients: user77@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua; Sender: oxford morris minor <mmoxford@yahoo.com>; Date: Wed Jul 01 10:47:33 GMT 2015; Subject: Dr. Jones wake up now</mmoxford@yahoo.com>
Wed Jul 01 10:55:26 GMT 2015	Reports archived message as a Spam	user2@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user	Recipients: user1@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua, user2@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua; Sender: oxford morris minor <mmoxford@yahoo.com>; Date: Wed Jul 01 10:52:00 GMT 2015; Subject: Fw: Dr. Jones wake up now</mmoxford@yahoo.com>
Wed Jul 01 10:55:52 GMT 2015	Reports archived message as a Spam	user2@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua	user	Recipients: user1@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua, user2@csgqa4.comodo.od.ua; Sender: oxford morris minor <mmoxford@yahoo.com>; Date: Wed Jul 01 10:52:00 GMT 2015; Subject: Fw: Dr. Jones wake up now</mmoxford@yahoo.com>

Appendix 1 - CASG Error Codes

The most common error codes for CASG are given below:

Error Code	Description
1	Unknown error
100	Import exception
101	Wrong format
102	Wrong outgoing user format IP password. If 'password' is empty then 'username' must be IP address.
103	Communication exception
200	User limit exception
300	Spam engine exception
1000	Customer has no domains
1001	Domains mismatch
1002	Alias already exists
1003	User already exists

Appendix 2 - CASG Comparison Table

Features	Paid Version	Free Version
Number of domains and incoming / outgoing users	Depends on the subscription	5 users and 1 domain
Number of domain aliases	5	Nil
Active Directory / LDAP Synchronization	✓	×
Create / Modify User Groups	✓	×
Assign permissions to User Groups	✓	×
Number of user aliases per user	5	Nil
Incoming / Outgoing email filtering	✓	✓
View all quarantined emails	✓	✓
Release quarantined emails	✓	✓
Whitelist / Blacklist quarantined emails	✓	✓
Configure spam detection settings	✓	✓
Report spam emails	✓	✓
View queued emails in Delivery Queue	✓	✓
Force Retry (Force Deliver) selected or all queued emails in Delivery Queue	~	×
Create local recipients	✓	×
Clear incoming / outgoing email cache	✓	×
Log search incoming emails	\checkmark	✓
Log search outgoing emails	✓	×
Create domain aliases	✓	×
Configure domain settings	✓	×
Configure email size restrictions	✓	×
Configure 'Blocked extensions' settings	✓	×
View users' release requests	✓	×
View users' whitelist / blacklist requests	✓	×
Whitelist / Blacklist recipients	✓	×
Whitelist / Blacklist senders	✓	✓
View users' login history	\checkmark	×
Email archive	✓	×
Number of email administrator accounts	Unlimited	1

Report management

×

Appendix 3 - Troubleshooting LDAP

This section explains how to resolve some common problems that may arise when configuring LDAP.

For full details on working with LDAP, http://help.comodo.com/topic-157-1-288-5720-Importing-Users-from-LDAP.html

• Problem: Unhandled Exception:

Solution: The exception was not classified.

 Problem: Size limit exceeded, unable to extract more then users from server. Size limit must be increased on server side or specify more strict query

Solution: Active Directory server has limitation on the number of search entries which may be iterated during querying. By default, Microsoft Active Directory allows only 1000 search entries. If the server received more than that, the administrator should override the default LDAP search size limit in the Active Directory, or use more strict query

• Problem: Incorrect filter settings:

Solution: Filter settings contain incorrect format or AD server doesn't support it.

Problem: Incorrect BaseDN settings: ...

Solution: BaseDN value has incorrect format.

• Problem: Unable to connect with provided host in BaseDN settings: ...

Solution: Provided domain name for BaseDN setting cannot be resolved in AD forest tree. Assure a domain name is correct.

• Problem: Unable to resolve LDAP referral, host unreachable. Users had found before referral might be imported. Possible solution is to use Global Catalog server (port 3268/3269 as default) to avoid resolving referrals.

Solution: CASG is trying to extract as much as possible information and following referrals to resolve all search entries in a query. If the URL in the referral is unreachable by CASG then the iteration will stop. Only partial result will be provided. That occurs when an administrator uses a private domain and it cannot be accessed with only domain name (the referral contains the list of URLs of the explicit domain names but the information about servers located in the private subnet is absent). To avoid the referrals occurrence in search entries use the Global Catalog server for querying. By default, the port for this server is 3268/3269 and that depends on whether the SSL enabled or not.

Problem: Unknown error. Users found before error might be imported. Original exception - ...

Solution: Search entries has been terminated within the replication process. Please contact support to find a solution.

• If you do not know your BaseDN, here's a step-by-step guide to determining your BaseDN.

Most organizations follow a similar convention for their determined BaseDN when the organization sets up its Active Directory. For a company with the domain of example.com, the typically BaseDN is **cn=Users,dc=example,dc=com**

COMODO Creating Trust Online*

Appendix 4 - Useful Links

This page contains links to external webpages which provide detailed explanations of LDAP features.

What Is the Global Catalog?

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc728188%28v=ws.10%29.aspx

Global Catalog and LDAP Searches

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc978012.aspx

LDAP Referrals

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc978014.aspx

Click the following links for more details http://help.comodo.com/topic-157-1-288-5720-Importing-Users-from-LDAP.html

About Comodo

The Comodo companies are leading global providers of Security, Identity and Trust Assurance services on the Internet. Comodo CA offers a comprehensive array of PKI Digital Certificates and Management Services, Identity and Content Authentication (Two-Factor - Multi-Factor) software, and Network Vulnerability Scanning and PCI compliance solutions. In addition, with over 10,000,000 installations of its threat prevention products, Comodo Security Solutions maintains an extensive suite of endpoint security software and services for businesses and consumers.

Continual innovation, a core competence in PKI and a commitment to reversing the growth of Internet-crime distinguish the Comodo companies as vital players in the Internet's ongoing development. Comodo, with offices in the US, UK, China, India, Romania and the Ukraine, secures and authenticates the online transactions and communications for over 200,000 business customers and millions of consumers, providing the intelligent security, authentication and assurance services necessary for trust in on-line transactions.

Comodo Security Solutions, Inc.

1255 Broad Street Clifton, NJ, 07013 United States Tel: +1.888.256.2608 Tel: +1.703.637.9361 Email: EnterpriseSolutions@Comodo.com

For additional information on Comodo - visit http://www.comodo.com.